

# Using SMARTSCORE X<sup>2</sup>

PRECISION MUSIC SCANNING

Rev. 10.5.8

Music is a kind of counting performed by the mind  
without knowing that it is counting.  
*G.W. Leibnitz (1714)*

Mathematics is music for the mind.  
Music is mathematics for the soul.  
*Anonymous (18th century)*



410 Bryant Circle,  
Suite K, Ojai,  
CA 93023

## Customer Service Plan

---

### Registration

Registration is accomplished during installation. To double-check if you are registered, go to HELP menu and select Register. If fields are empty, please fill them in and push “Submit”. If the HELP menu item “*Activate your copy now*” appears in a grey color, your copy is already registered, validated and ready to use. You will be able to receive technical support only if you are a registered owner. Registering your product is important for you in many ways:

- You will be eligible for free periodic updates from our website and special upgrade prices for future product releases.
- You will be given priority access to Musitek Technical Support and Customer Service using your Customer ID.

---

### Warranty

All Musitek products are covered by a limited 90-day warranty. To replace a defective DVD that is still under warranty, contact Musitek Customer Service. Out of warranty DVDs and manuals can be ordered online or by phone. A nominal charge will be applied.

---

### Customer Service

Musitek’s website contains up-to-date information on all our products. You may register online and download posted updates. Also, you may e-mail Musitek Customer Service for upgrade information, to notify us of a change in your address or request other product-related information.

- <http://www.musitek.com>
- [sales@musitek.com](mailto:sales@musitek.com)
- **Office: (805) 646-8051 / FAX: (805) 646-8099**
- **410 Bryant Circle., Suite K, Ojai, CA 93023-4200**

---

### Web Page E-Mail Phone / FAX Address

---

### Technical Support

Most solutions to technical issues can be found in the manual or by accessing FAQs and support videos from our website. To contact a specialist, send e-mail either from the website or from your own e-mailer. We strongly encourage communicating by e-mail so you can attach problem files along with descriptions of your issues. Phone calls are generally answered during the hours listed below. You may also FAX us your questions.

- [tech@musitek.com](mailto:tech@musitek.com)
- **Phone: (805) 646-5841 / FAX: (805) 646-8099  
10 AM to 2 PM Pacific Time - Monday thru Friday**
- <http://www.musitek.com> (also at [www.smartscore.com](http://www.smartscore.com))

---

### E-Mail Phone / FAX Web Page

## Notices

Musitek® and its licensors retain all ownership rights to the SmartScore® computer program and/or other computer programs offered by Musitek including all associated documentation and materials. Use of SmartScore is governed by the license agreement printed on the media envelope or within the installer encoded in the program. SmartScore source code is a confidential trade secret of Musitek. You may not attempt to decipher, reverse-engineer, decompile or develop any derivative code found within SmartScore or knowingly allow others to do so. SmartScore and its documentation may not be sublicensed and may not be transferred to any other entities without the prior written consent of Musitek.

SmartScore is licensed and not sold to you. You may install and use it on up to five (5) different machines solely for your own use before having to request more installation permissions from Musitek. You may not copy the installer or executable program onto any media even if at the same location. You are authorized to store copies of generated files for your own use. You are free to distribute SmartScore-generated files without any restriction from Musitek. Successful installation of SmartScore is confirmation that you agree with the terms outlined in the Musitek end user license agreement (EULA).

Your right to reproduce this manual is restricted by international copyright laws. Making copies, adaptations or compilations of this publication without prior written consent of Musitek is prohibited by law and constitutes a punishable legal violation.

MUSITEK PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Musitek may revise this publication from time to time without notice.

*Introduction to SmartScore X<sup>2</sup>* and *Using SmartScore X<sup>2</sup>*; Written by Chris Newell  
SmartScore was designed and developed by Chris Newell, Ojai, CA  
Programming by Moniusoft S.A. and Conficode S.A., Warsaw, Poland  
SmartScore and Musitek are registered trademarks of Musitek Corporation, Ojai, CA  
Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation  
Apple, Macintosh and OS X are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

### Important Information about Copyright

Copyrighted material is protected from infringement by U.S. and international law. Title 17 of the US Code governs the making and reproduction of works protected by copyright. Under this code, reproduction, distribution and display of works protected under copyright is illegal if done without the permission of the copyright owner *unless the proposed use falls under the definition of “Fair Use”*. If you have reservations that your proposed use of SmartScore may be in violation of copyright law, consult with your attorney before using this product.



## Table of Contents

<b>INDEX.....</b>	<b>243</b>
<b>Installation and Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
SmartScore X <sup>2</sup> Installation procedures .....	1
How to use this manual .....	2
What Edition symbols mean .....	2
<b>SmartScore X<sup>2</sup> Tutorial .....</b>	<b>4</b>
Recognition of Sample Files (Fandago.tif) .....	4
System Report .....	5
Unify Key and Time .....	5
Editing Sample Files .....	5
What you will see first .....	5

Aria Player and Playback Console .....	6
Notation Editor .....	6
Editing Fandango .....	7
Editing Chorale .....	10
Editing Gluck .....	12
Editing Songbook .....	14
Editing Guitar .....	15
Macintosh / Windows shortcut conventions .....	17

## **Scanning and Recognition ..... 18**

Preparing to Scan Music .....	18
Scanner Drivers .....	18
Selecting your scanner driver in SmartScore (Windows only)	18
Choosing a scanner .....	19
Scanning in Macintosh® .....	19
Scanning Outside of SmartScore .....	19
Scanning Orchestral Scores .....	20
Using the SmartScore Scanning Interface .....	20
Enhanced scanning functions .....	20
Scanner settings .....	21
Choosing an alternative scanning interface .....	22
Processing PDF files for Recognition .....	22
Reordering the File List .....	23
Removing, replacing and re-saving scanned pages .....	24
Recognition Sequence .....	24
Recognition Options .....	25
Post-Recognition .....	28
Scanning Part Scores (Score-Parts) .....	28
Recognition Accuracy .....	29

Troubleshooting Scanning and Recognition .....	31
Image Editor .....	34
Opening files in the Image Editor .....	34
Image Editing Tools .....	34
Page Tools .....	35
Cut / Copy and Paste functions .....	38

**Playback .....** **39**

Working with the Aria Player and Garritan sounds .....	39
Notes on working with the Aria player .....	40
Quick Playback Tricks .....	41
Playing back a selected section .....	41
Playback Console .....	42
Playback Console controls .....	43
Dynamics and Articulations .....	44
Tuplets and Slurs (Legatos) .....	44
Voices and Playback .....	45
Voice Visibility .....	45
Voice Splitting (Select + “H”) .....	45
Assigning instruments to voices .....	46
Changing instrument sounds on the fly .....	47
Correcting Vertical Alignment .....	47
Repeats .....	49
Repeated verses .....	49
Numbered Endings .....	50
Deleting numbered endings and barlines at the end of systems	51
Change of key/time and the double barline .....	52
Jumps .....	52
Working with the Coda .....	52

Working with the Segno .....	52
Working with the da Capo (D.C.), dal Segno (D.S.), and Fine signs .....	53
Playback Properties .....	54
Note Properties .....	54
Property Options (All Properties windows) .....	55
Slur (Legato) Properties .....	55
Tempo Marking Properties .....	56
Accelerando, Descelerando and Ritard Properties .....	56
Hairpin, Cresc. and Decresc. Properties .....	57
Trill Properties .....	57
Dynamic Marking Properties .....	58
Tuplet Properties .....	58
Multi-Measure Rest Properties .....	59
Barline Properties (Pickup measures and Codas) .....	59
Other Playback Options .....	61
Karaoke View .....	61
Instrument Templates .....	61
Transposed instruments .....	62
Adding instruments .....	63
Add drum tracks .....	63
Swing .....	63
ENF Graphical controllers .....	63
Velocity Controller .....	64
Tempo Controller .....	64
Normalize controllers .....	65
Working with Finale® and other scorers or programs. ....	66
Converting SmartScore files to other file types .....	66
Maintaining playback continuity .....	66
Merging Systems .....	66
Restoring a missed or “invisible” staff line .....	67

Re-linking parts .....	69
3rd-party VST (Windows) and AU (Mac) audio setup .....	71
MIDI Setup .....	72
Audio MIDI Setup (Macintosh) .....	73

## **Basic Score Editing ..... 74**

Navigating Inside an ENF Document .....	74
Active staffline .....	74
Page View Display .....	74
Scan View Window .....	75
Zoom .....	76
Paging .....	76
Status Bar options .....	76
Editing the Music .....	77
Pitch shift (Nudge mode) .....	77
Rhythmic errors .....	77
Inserting Notation Symbols .....	78
Quick-select (Ctrl + Click): .....	78
Insert mode .....	79
Stem direction .....	79
Deleting objects .....	79
Undo / Redo .....	80
Editing note clusters .....	80
Inserting, changing and deleting beamed notes .....	81
Forming beam groups (Select + “B”) .....	82
Barlines .....	82
ENF Symbol Properties .....	82
Score Properties .....	82
Barline Properties .....	83

Note Properties .....	84
Transposition by Key and Clef .....	84
Printing and exporting your final score .....	85
Optimizing oversized and undersized scanned scores .....	86
Saving and Exporting ENF Files .....	87
Working with Finale® and other scorewriters or programs. ....	87
Converting SmartScore files to other file types .....	88
Copying a SmartScore page for pasting into other programs	88
Creating a New ENF Score from Scratch .....	89
New score .....	89
Using Built-in Templates .....	90
Real Time Recording .....	90
Step Time Recording .....	90

## **Reformatting, Part Extraction & Page Setup .... 91**

Reformatting scores in ENF view .....	91
Nudge Mode (Barlines) .....	91
Adjusting measures .....	91
Horizontal Reformatting .....	92
Vertical Reformatting (Line, staff and system spacing using tabs)	92
Changing line spacing and distances in the active system (red tabs) .....	92
Changing staff line spacing in the active (Blue tabs) .....	93
Document Page Setup .....	94
Page Centering .....	94
Changing default margins .....	95
Changing page orientation of an ENF score .....	95
Default Page Size and Type .....	96
Custom document layouts .....	96

Document Layout Defaults .....	97
Edit > Format Score .....	99
Using Score Structure to Extract & Join Parts .....	100
Structure and hierarchy .....	100
Extracting parts in Score Structure .....	100
Creating a conductor's score from individual parts .....	101
Creating Part Scores from Ensemble Scores .....	102

**Detailed ENF Editing ..... 104**

Quick Keys .....	104
Quick-select (Ctrl + Click) .....	104
Inserting and changing symbols ("C") .....	104
Deleting notes and symbols ("X") .....	104
Select tool ("O") .....	105
Using the Select Tool ("O") to edit selected objects .....	105
Transposition .....	106
Transposition Strategy .....	107
Limit Transposition .....	108
Score Properties .....	109
Line/staff spacing .....	110
Staff Properties .....	111
Bracketing .....	112
System Manager .....	112
Part Linking .....	112
Add empty page .....	112
System > Insert above/Insert below/Remove .....	112
Staff / Part > Insert / Remove .....	112
Score-Part > Insert above/Insert below/Remove .....	112
Ossia .....	113

TAB .....	113
Go to. ....	113
System Manager .....	113
Part Names .....	114
Assigning MIDI Instruments to Voices (General MIDI Playback only) .....	114
Extracting Parts .....	115
Extracting Voices .....	116
Adding a new part to the score .....	116
Super System .....	118
Part Visibility .....	118
Deleting parts .....	118
Instrument Templates .....	119
Format Score .....	119
Applying changes in System Manager to the score .....	119
Nudge mode (Shift button) .....	120
Changing note pitches .....	120
Moving notes and rests horizontally .....	120
Resizing beam angles and note stems .....	120
Repositioning text fields linked to an active staffline. ....	120
Reshaping arcs and slurs .....	120
Repositioning measures using barlines .....	121
Special fixes possible with Nudge mode .....	121
Tool Palettes .....	123
Notes and Rests palette .....	124
Articulations palette .....	127
Dynamics Palette .....	133
Tempo Palette .....	135
Tempo Markings .....	136
Change of tempo (metronome mark) .....	136
Metronome mark .....	137

Ritards, Accelerandos, Descelerandos . . . . .	137
Tempo controller . . . . .	137
Clefs and Signatures (Key and Time) palette . . . . .	137
Barlines palette (I) . . . . .	140
Text and tools palette . . . . .	141
Keyboard Shortcuts . . . . .	141
Unify (U) . . . . .	141
Dots (D) . . . . .	141
Ties (V) . . . . .	142
Beam direction (A) . . . . .	142
Stem direction (S) . . . . .	142
Voice Splitting (Select + “H”) . . . . .	143
Part Linking (Ctrl+L) . . . . .	143
Navigator . . . . .	144
Open (Ctrl+O / (Cmnd+M Mac) . . . . .	144
Scan . . . . .	144
Recognition . . . . .	144
Unify Score (“U”) . . . . .	144
Setup . . . . .	146
Print Preview . . . . .	146
Score . . . . .	146
Record . . . . .	146
Karaoke View . . . . .	146
MIDI View (Ctrl + I / Cmnd + I for Mac) . . . . .	146
Tiling . . . . .	146
CD Burn . . . . .	147
Auto-Beaming . . . . .	148
Auto-Spacing . . . . .	148
Working with Contrapuntal Voices . . . . .	148
Voice color . . . . .	148
Overriding voice color assignments . . . . .	148

Checking vertical alignment of voices . . . . .	150
Swap position of note heads (Select + “L”) . . . . .	150
Cross-staff voicing . . . . .	150
Cross-measure beaming . . . . .	151
Overlapping or offset noteheads . . . . .	152
Hidden Symbols . . . . .	152
More ENF navigating . . . . .	153
Split-screen and scan view reference views . . . . .	153
Scrolling . . . . .	155
Paging . . . . .	155
Jump To Page: (Ctrl +G or Cmnd+G for Mac) . . . . .	155
MIDI to ENF . . . . .	155
Troubleshooting ENF Problems . . . . .	158

## **Editing Text, Lyrics & Symbols . . . . . 162**

Lyrics . . . . .	162
Dashes, spaces and underscores . . . . .	163
Verifying vertically aligned voices . . . . .	164
Text mode . . . . .	164
Entering and editing text . . . . .	164
Adding and changing styles of Text and Lyrics . . . . .	165
Nudging text . . . . .	166
Music Symbols . . . . .	166
Guitar Fret and Chord Symbols . . . . .	166
Choosing a fret / chord symbol from the library . . . . .	166
Changing Chord and Fret symbols . . . . .	167
Creating a new chord symbol / fret configuration . . . . .	169
Adding additional fret configurations to the library . . . . .	169
Guitar Library file management . . . . .	170

Chord Symbol Preferences .....	170
Editing chord and fret symbols in ENF .....	171
Non-musical Symbols .....	171
Using Text and symbols to mark up scores .....	171
Document Preferences .....	172
Bracketing .....	172
Score Header .....	174

## **Working with TAB & Drums ..... 175**

Recognizing music with TAB or Percussion parts .....	175
Converting staff line types .....	175
Working with tablature (TAB) parts .....	176
Tablature notation display in SmartScore .....	177
Change fingering configurations .....	177
Editing TAB symbols .....	178
Creating a guitar TAB staff below a melody line .....	179
Unifying TAB line distances and line spacing. ....	179
Editing and creating percussion parts .....	180
Editing a percussion part .....	180
Playback > Drumset .....	180
Creating a percussion staff from scratch .....	181
Automatic Drum Patterns .....	183
Play back with automatic drum pattern .....	183
Adding custom drum patterns from ENF .....	184
Virtual Drum Kit .....	185
Recording a virtual drum track .....	185
Defining Virtual Drum Kit .....	186

## **MIDI Editing and Sequencing ..... 187**

MIDI Views .....	187
Selecting MIDI views .....	187
MIDI Toolbar .....	188
Closing MIDI Views .....	188
Track Overview .....	188
Selecting tracks and MIDI events .....	188
Playback .....	189
Spacebar .....	189
Mini-Console .....	189
MIDI Devices .....	190
Playback Range .....	191
Piano Roll .....	191
Selecting MIDI tracks .....	191
Tiling ENF and MIDI views .....	193
Inserting program changes (Assign new MIDI instrument for playback) .....	193
Velocity and Tempo Graphical Controllers .....	195
Shuttle Tool .....	195
MIDI Instrument settings .....	196
MIDI event selection .....	197
Changing MIDI event attributes .....	198
Note Event window .....	199
Cut/Copy and Paste .....	200
Event List .....	201
Changing parameters of selected notes .....	202
Inserting note events .....	202
Editing Key, Time and Tempo .....	203
Inserting Non-Note Events .....	203
Playback Console .....	204

Adjusting Playback Console Settings .....	205
Display Controls .....	205
Time .....	205
Velocity .....	205
MIDI Recording .....	206
Recording Options .....	206
Metronome .....	206
Snap to .....	208
Recording New Tracks / Voices .....	208
External Timer .....	209
Setting Punch In and Punch Out points .....	209
Step Time Recording .....	209
Virtual Drum Kit .....	211
Playback Considerations after MIDI Editing .....	211
MIDI to ENF .....	211
Saving MIDI Files .....	211
Recording to Audio (Save as file / Burn to CD) .....	212

**Reference ..... 214**

Preferences .....	214
Document Preferences .....	214
Program Preferences .....	216
ENF EDITOR > FILE Menu .....	217
ENF EDITOR > EDIT Menu .....	219
ENF EDITOR > VIEW Menu .....	224
ENF EDITOR > WINDOW Menu .....	228
ENF EDITOR > HELP Menu .....	229
MIDI EDITOR > FILE Menu .....	230
MIDI EDITION > OPTIONS Menu .....	233

MIDI PLAYBACK Menu .....	234
IMAGE EDITOR> FILE Menu .....	235
IMAGE EDITOR > EDIT Menu .....	236
IMAGE EDITOR > VIEW Menu .....	237

**Glossary .....** **239**

Score Formats .....	239
Score Components .....	240
MIDI Terms .....	241
SmartScore Terms .....	242

**INDEX .....** **243**

---

# 1)

## Installation and Introduction

---

### 1.1 SmartScore X<sup>2</sup> Installation procedures

SmartScore requires personalization and verification of ownership the first time it is opened. You will be able to install SmartScore 5 times on up to 5 computers you own and use exclusively. Contact Musitek Technical Support if additional installs are necessary. For details, please read the SmartScore licensing agreement.

- a. You will need to be connected to the Internet during the installation. If you do not have Internet access you will be given a confirmation number which will require entering a response from Musitek (Verification ID). To complete manual verification, contact technical support at tech@musitek.com (805-646-5841).

**NOTE:** Turn firewall & virus protection OFF during installation. Copying the installed program to other media will cripple the program.

#### Download Installations

- a. After purchasing SmartScore for downloading, you will be taken to a “Thank you” page which will give you your new ID and serial number. Be sure to print this page out and store it for future reference. You will then be directed to a link for downloading. (If you are upgrading from a previous Musitek product, you will first be required to enter your previous ID and serial number).
- b. In the “Download Product” page, you will be able to choose to download the complete installer (SmartScore X<sup>2</sup>, Aria Player and Garritan sounds) or just the SmartScore X<sup>2</sup> product you purchased. The full download installer is over 600MB and may be slow or possibly even time out if you have a slow Internet connection.
- c. If you choose to download only the SmartScore X2 installer, you will be given a link where you can purchase the full DVD for \$5 plus shipping.

#### DVD Installation

- d. Insert the SmartScore X2 DVD into your computer’s DVD drive.
- e. (*Windows*) Inserting DVD should launch **Auto-run**. If not, Push **Start > Run** and Browse to find your DVD drive. Double-click ***Install\_SmartScoreX2.msi***.

- f. (*Macintosh*) Insert the DVD and open the Macintosh folder. Double-click on the file *Install\_SmartScoreX2*.

### All Installations

- g. After successful installation, launch your copy of SmartScore X. Follow personalization and verification steps. You will need to enter your unique Customer ID and Serial Number which is printed on the DVD box or was given to you when you downloaded the software.
- h. Installation requires online registration and verification. File saving and printing will be disabled after 30 days if registration is not completed. If you are unable to register online, please contact technical support at **805-646-5841** or by e-mail at **tech@musitek.com**.

## 1.2 How to use this manual

This manual is a reference. It is not intended for bedtime reading. The best method for learning or solving an issue is to go directly to the **Index** on page 243, find your topic or issue then find the corresponding page number. We strongly suggest new users walk through the Tutorial, Chapter 2), page 4 before diving in. A Quick Reference Guide is included within the program and can be accessed from the **Help** menu.

NOTE: We've produced a number of helpful support videos. You can find them at: [www.musitek.com/videos.html](http://www.musitek.com/videos.html)

### 1.2.1 What Edition symbols mean

Not all features described apply to every SmartScore edition. Symbols in the left margin identify editions that do not apply.

- SmartScore Pro Edition

The Pro edition has no restrictions. All features and descriptions in this manual apply to SmartScore Pro Edition.



- Not found in MIDI Edition

Indicates the feature or description does not apply to MIDI Edition.



- Not found in MIDI or Guitar Editions

Does not apply to either MIDI or Guitar Edition.



- Not found in MIDI or Piano Editions

Indicates the feature or description does not apply to either MIDI or Piano Edition.



- Not found in Piano or Guitar Editions

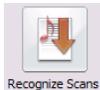
Indicates the feature or description does not apply to either Piano or Guitar Edition.

## 2)

# SmartScore X<sup>2</sup> Tutorial

## 2.1 Recognition of Sample Files (Fandango.tif)

SmartScore includes several pre-scanned TIFF files. For the purpose of this tutorial, we will start with sample file, *Fandango.tif*.



- a. If the SmartScore **Task Window** is open (**Ctrl + “W”** will open it at any time), push the “Recognize Scans” button. The **Navigator** and the **Toolbar** also have a **Recognition** button.

**NOTE:** The Task Window opens automatically only at program start. It can be launched at any time with **Ctrl + “W”** or by selecting **Recognition** from **Windows** menus (on Windows) or from the **File** menu (on Macintosh).

The **Begin Recognition** window opens. This is the window you will use to select previously-scanned music for recognition.

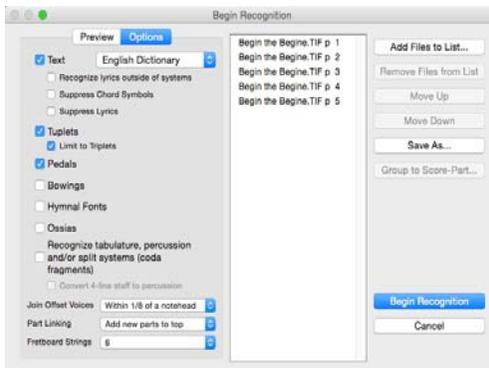


FIGURE 2 - 1: Begin Recognition window

- b. Press **Add Files to List**. In the **Open** dialog box, double-click on the sample file, *Fandango.tif*, inside the SmartScore folder. This will add the pre-scanned file to the list.
- c. Press **Begin Recognition**.

This is where the magic happens.)



## 2.1.1 System Report

Once recognition is complete, you will see list giving the total number of systems found as well as the largest and smallest number of parts found in any given system. This is especially important information if you are working with large scores or scores with expanding and collapsing systems. Click “Open SmartScore File” to proceed normally.

NOTE: If the information in the System Report differs significantly from your original score, there may be problems with your scanned image, such as broken systems or missing parts due to poor originals or incorrectly scanned pages.

## 2.1.2 Unify Key and Time

In the Unify window, click **OK** to accept the default (Unify key signatures based on the topmost staff line in each system). Accepting the defaults after recognition is usually fine.

The name *Fandango.enf* will appear in the *Save As* file name window. SmartScore’s file extension is ENF (Extended Notation Format). The *.enf* extension will automatically be added to all file names after recognition. Click on **Save**.

## 2.2 Editing Sample Files

### 2.2.1 What you will see first

After recognition of the Fandago file, the screen will fill with a number of colorful and interesting windows. Don’t be afraid. It’s all good.



FIGURE 2 - 1: Opening screen after recognizing a file

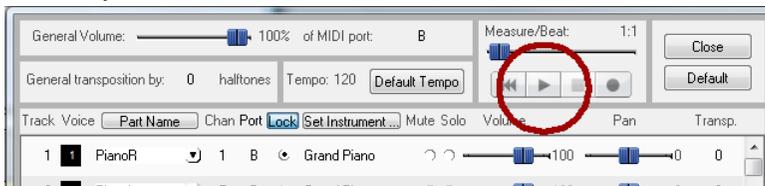
## 2.2.2 Aria Player and Playback Console

The information window is important, but may be a bit incomprehensible at first. For now, just push OK. (Do not click “Don’t show this again” unless the message is clear to you.) In order to play back the music, you will need to load some instruments into Aria player.

- a. Left-click in the lower left hand corner of the “Ensemble” window in the Aria player, choose “SmartScore” and select “All\_Piano”.



- b. Move your cursor to the “Playback Console” and in the transport controls, push the Play button.



- c. To stop playback, hit the Spacebar. The Spacebar starts and stops playback.
- d. With your cursor, click and drag an edge of the Playback Console and drag it to the right side of the screen. Do the same with the Aria player. For more information about the Aria player, see (Section 4.1, "Working with the Aria Player and Garritan sounds" on page 39). Now, lets discover SmartScore’s notation editor...

## 2.2.3 Notation Editor

The original scanned image is displayed in the upper pane and the newly recognized SmartScore version appears below it in white. file appears below it. Use the scroller bars, mouse wheel, or arrow keys on your keyboard to scroll up and down the page.

**Mac Users:** Try the “overlay” mode controlled by the variable opacity slider in the Toolbar. In the main menu, select **View > Split screen > Overlay**.

Only one staff line is active at a time. The active staff displays black while inactive staff lines display in grey. Move your cursor within the boundary of a staff until it highlights black. **Caps Lock** will “lock in” an active staff until it is hit again. If you want all staves to

display in black, go to the **View** menu and uncheck **Show Active Staff**. If you do this, remember to move your cursor within a staff line first before doing any editing within a staff line.



To see all staff lines in black, check “**Show Active Staff**” in the **View** menu. Since editing is done a staff-to-staff basis, turn this back on if you are unsure which staff line you are editing.

## 2.2.4 Editing Fandango

Once you have recognized Fandango.tif, it’s time to edit the few mistakes...

### Deleting symbols / Expanding palettes / Grace notes

The beamed grace note in the first measure was recognized as a quarter note.

- Hit “**X**” key on your keyboard and with your mouse, left click on the quarter note to delete it.
- Click and hold on the quarter note button in the Note and Rests palette. In a second or two, all possible note values will appear.

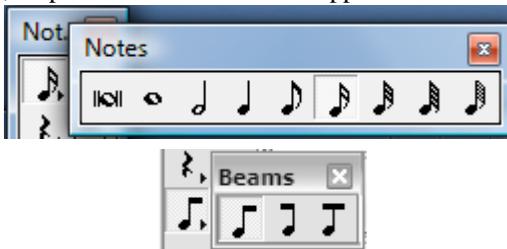


FIGURE 2 - 1: Expanding Tool Palettes (Notes) and selecting Beam direction

- Select the 16th note (two flags).
- In the Notes and Rest palette, click on the beam direction button. Hold down for a second or two and select “right beam”.
- Now click on the “Grace note” button to the right of the beam button.



**NOTE:** Use the “**S**” key on your keyboard to toggle whether the inserted note will be “stem up” or “stem down”.

- Move your cursor to where first “grace note” should appear and click to insert.
- Move your cursor to where the second grace note should appear and click. You should now see two grace notes joined together with a double beam

## Changing note values using *Quick-select* method

Notice Measure 3 is highlighted pink. This means there is a rhythmic problem. The beam notes in the treble clef should all be 8th notes, not 16ths. We will use *Quick-select* to fix it without having to go back to the tool palette.

- a. Position your cursor over the middle note of the 8th note beam group in the next measure (Measure 2) until it highlights yellow. With **Ctrl** button down, click on it. Notice the cursor immediately becomes a middle-beamed 8th note.

This action is called *Quick-select*. With **Ctrl** down, clicking on any object will inherit its attributes. You may find *Quick-select* to be the fastest and easiest method for selecting most musical symbols while editing.

- b. Position your cursor over the first 16th beamed note in Measure 3 until it highlights yellow and click on it. The note will change to an 8th beam.
- c. Notice the measure's pink color disappears. This means there is no longer a timing error in the measure.
- d. Push the **Space** bar to begin playing the piece. To pause, hit **Space**.

**NOTE:** If the target note turns light blue, a new note will be inserted. Only objects that highlight yellow will become changed. If a mistake is made, push the **Undo** button or **Ctrl** + "**Z**" (**Cmd** + "**Z**" for one-button Macs).



## Copying and pasting several notes at once / Pitch shift

In Measure 23, notice a grace note was mis-recognized, again as a quarter note.

- a. Hit the "**X**" key and click to delete the first, incorrect quarter note.
- b. Zoom out (right-click) and return your cursor to the beginning of Measure 1. Hit the "**O**" key (or push the "Selector" icon in the ENF toolbar) and right-drag to highlight both grace notes. Select **Edit > Copy** or push **Ctrl** + **C/Cmd** + **C**.
- c. Position your cursor in Measure 24. Push **Ctrl** + **V** / **Cmd** + **V** and click to paste the grace notes where they should be.
- d. The pitch of the first grace note should be e, not d. Zoom in with zoom too. While holding the **SHIFT** button down, drag the head of the first grace note up a step to e.



## Transposing the key

- a. Push the "Transpose" button in the Toolbar (or select **Edit > Transpose**).
- b. In the **Transpose** window, click the scroller upwards to change the target key signature from 1 flat (*Dm*) to 1 sharp (*Em*).
- c. Push **OK** to effect the key transposition.



## Unifying irregular staff sizes

This piece comes from an older edition with somewhat irregular sized staff lines. Notice the bass staff is slightly larger than the treble staff. SmartScore measures and displays staff and systems distances exactly as the original.

- a. Locate the blue “staff height” tab left of the bass staff in Measure 15. Move the blue tab upward to slightly decrease staff height so it matches the staff width of the treble clef. Once you are satisfied with staff and line spacing, hit the “Caps Lock” key to “lock in” the active system.
- b. Push the “Unify” button in the Navigator. Select “**Unify System, Staff and Line Spacing**” (Based on active system). Push **OK**.
- c. Hit the “Caps Lock” key again to release the active system.



## Prepare for printing (Page setup / centering / adjust margins)

In unifying system spacing, it's possible that the last system may have rolled over to a new page. Here, we will center the score and readjust page margins...

- a. Push the “**Setup**” button in the Navigator or select **File > Page Setup**. Notice default **Document Layout** is *From Recognition*.
- b. Change Document Layout to *Center on Page*. The print preview pane in the background will change to reflect actual page size. Push **Apply**.
- c. If necessary, reposition the green header/footer tabs located inside the left margin ruler.
- d. Push the **Print** icon at the top of the Page Setup window.



## Visualizing contrapuntal voices

Turning on voice color will display contrapuntal voices as different colors. This allows you to view secondary voices (both notes and rests) in red and tertiary voices in green. Any notes belonging to a 4th voice will appear in blue.

- a. In Page Setup view, push “**Main View**” button at top of screen.
- b. In the Toolbar, push the “**Voice Visibility**” button.



Notice in Measure 2 how notes and rests appear as either black or red. They represent two of the four possible contrapuntal voices. Voices can be assigned different MIDI instruments if desired.

- c. Push the **Console** button to open the **Playback Console** or use the keyboard shortcut, **Ctrl + 9 / Command + 9**.



FIGURE 2 - 2: Playback Console with Voice Visibility on

## Changing Instrument sounds in Playback Console

The left and right-hand piano parts have been automatically recognized as piano and assigned the General MIDI patch of *Grand Piano*.

- a. In the Instrument column of Track 2 / Voice 2 (red track), change the instrument to *Timpani*. Press the spacebar or **Play** button. You will hear that the secondary voice of the left hand will be different from the others.
- b. Move volume slider left or right to increase or decrease volume on one or more parts. **Close** Playback Console.



### 2.2.5 Editing Chorale



Many scores are written with multiple voices within a single staff line. Solo piano, guitar and choral music typically include different voices moving independently in and out of measures. “SmartScore’s voiceline threading allows for easy isolating and manipulating of voices.

**NOTE:** SA/TB scores will have voices separated either by opposing stems or by two noteheads joined to a single stem. Many hymnals combine SA and TB to a single stem (cluster). To separate two-note clusters into separate voices, see "Voice Splitting (Select + “H”)", Section 4.5.2, on page 45.

The sample file, *Chorale.tif*, is a well-known Lutheran hymn with four voices: *Soprano*, *Alto*, *Tenor* and *Bass* written in two staff lines.

- Push the **Recog** button on the Navigator. Press the **Add Files to List** button in the *Begin Recognition* window. Select *Chorale.tif* from the SmartScore folder
- Press the **Begin Recognition** button. Once Recognition is complete, press “*Open SmartScore File*” and save the file.
- Hit the **spacebar** to hear the playback.

### Quick-select

Hold the “Ctrl” button down and in the upper staff, click on the green note in Measure 3. Now hit the “X” key then click to delete it. Hit the “C” key and drop the selected note into the lower staff line at *f3*.

### Correct playback of pickup and closeout measures

Pickup and closeout measures are commonly found in hymns and other vocal scores. Notes may be correctly recognized within these incomplete (pink) measures but playback will hesitate because SmartScore normally locks playback to the time signature. There are two ways to force such measures to play unconstrained notation (free rhythm):



1. Push the **Properties** tool (**Esc** key). Click on the barline at the beginning of the first measure. In the Barline Properties window, change the **Playback** pull-down menu from *Current time signature* to *As written*. Repeat for Measure 5. This will affect only individual measures. It will not affect playback of any other measures in the piece.
2. To have the entire score ignore the default time signature, go to Playback menu and select “Play as written”.

### Apply different MIDI sounds to each part

Make sure you see both black and red notes. If not, push the “Voice Visibility” button found in the lower toolbar.

In the upper staff, the *Soprano* voice is black (Voice 1) and the *Alto* voice is red (Voice 2). In the lower staff, the *Baritone* voice is black and *Bass* is red. Up to four voices are possible within each staff.



- Hold down the **Ctrl** key and hit the “9” key (**Cmd + 9** for Mac). This opens the Playback Console. Or push the “Console” button in the Toolbar.
- Change MIDI Instrument assignments of the two voices in the top part, **PianoR (Track 1)**. Change Voice 1 (black) to *Choir Aahs* and Voice 2 (red) to *Voice Oohs*.
- To hear separate voices, push the **Play** button, manipulate the volume sliders and the solo or mute buttons. Press **Close** to close the Playback Console.

## 2.2.6 Editing Gluck



- a. Push the **Recog** button in the Navigator. In the **Begin Recognition** window press **Add Files to List**. Double-click the file **Gluck.tif** inside the SmartScore folder.



- b. Press **Begin Recognition** button to start the recognition process. Accept the post-recognition defaults. Select **Open SmartScore File** in the System Report window and **Save** the ENF file.
  - c. To listen to *Gluck*, simply press the **spacebar**. Hit the spacebar again to stop.
  - d. A natural sign is missing from a half-note in Measure 18. **Quick-select** (Ctrl+click) on the natural sign in the right-hand piano part. Move the cursor into the flute part and click on the half-note to insert the natural.

### Using Properties tool to change playback characteristics

In Measure 20, the words “*rit.*” (ritard or ritenudo) and “*poco rit.*” were recognized and applied to gradually slow playback down for that measure. The word “*poco*” (a little bit) was also recognized, but not necessarily applied. To change playback characteristics of nearly any musical symbol, use the Properties tool.

- a. With Properties tool active (**Esc** key), click on the word “*rit.*”.

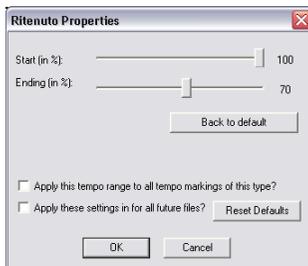


FIGURE 2 - 3: Ritenudo Properties window

- b. Change the tempo value of the **Ending** of the measure by moving the slider to something like 70 or 80% of the current value.
- c. Push **OK**. The measure will slow a bit more.
- d. Repeat in the bass clef, this time by clicking on the marking, “*poco rit.*”.

**NOTE:** With Properties tool active, try clicking on the “*r*” and “*f*” signs in Measure 19 to get a sense of how this tool can work.

## Selecting a few measures for playback

You may want to hear back only Measures 19 through 20 to test the playback settings which you changed using the Properties tool.

*To playback a small range of measures,*



- Push the **Select** tool in the Toolbar or hit the “O” key on your keyboard.
- Hold down the **right** mouse button (**alt + click** for Mac) and drag inside a selected range of measures. Measures will highlight blue and are staged for playback using **Spacebar** or the **Play** button.
- Press the Spacebar again to replay the selected range from the beginning.
- Click anywhere outside of the range of measures to deselect the range.
- To play back a larger range of measures or to continuously loop playback, choose **Playback > Set Play Range** from the main menu. The Set Play range window will float and remain open until closed.

## Extracting a part in Score Structure

- Push the “Structure” button in the Navigator palette to the left of the screen. Score Structure is an environment that will display all open ENF files in a hierarchy and allow you to manipulate the arrangement and visibility of parts and voices. You can even move parts from one open ENF file to another simply by dragging the selected part to the other file.

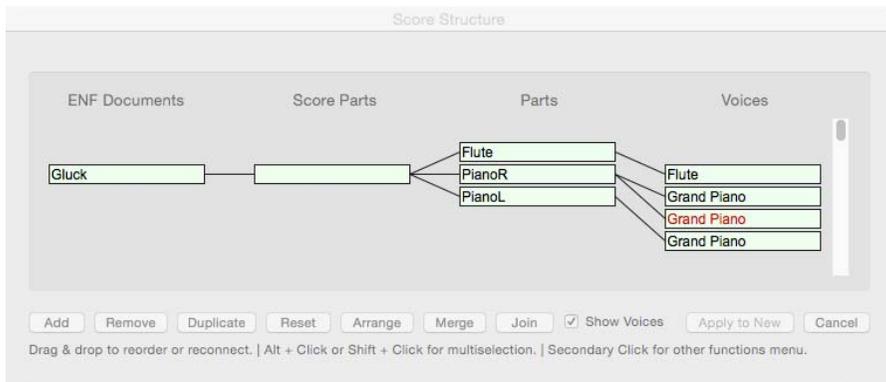


FIGURE 2 - 4: Extracting a part in Score Structure window

- b. Click to highlight PianoR and PianoL parts then push the “Remove” button at the bottom of the window.
- c. To create a new document containing only the flute part, select “Apply to New”.
- d. A new ENF file will open displaying only the flute part.
- e. Your original 3-part score will remain open and unchanged.

### 2.2.7 Editing Songbook

- a. Select **Recognition**.
- a. Press the **Add Files to List** button in the *Begin Recognition* window. Select *Songbook.tif* and press **Open**. In the *Options* area, make sure the box to the left of *Text* is checked.
- b. Press the **Begin Recognition** button. Once Recognition is complete, accept “*Open ENF*” and save the ENF file, *Songbook.enf*.



### Pickup, closeout and error measures

In the Aria player, click on the lower left-hand corner of the Ensemble window and select SmartScore > OneVoice\_Piano. This will add a vocal sound to the topmost staff line.

Hit the Spacebar and listen to the first line of music. Notice there is a delay after the first and last measure. The first measure with 1 1/2 beats is a “pickup” measure and the last with 3 beats is a “closeout” measure. SmartScore applies the default time signature to each measure so we need to tell it to “Play what’s written”.

- a. In the **Playback** menu, select “Play as Written”. Now, all measures will play exactly what is written and the time signature will be ignored.
- b. Go to **View** menu and in the “Show” submenu, uncheck “Error measures”. This will turn off the pink color which highlight measures having incorrect beats.

NOTE: Individual measures can be assigned to “Play as written” by clicking the barline preceding the measure with the Properties tool and checking “Play as written.”

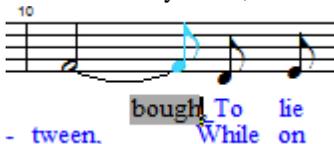
### Editing Lyrics

The first word in the second system lost the “W” because it was broken up.

- a. In the lower toolbar, locate the “L” button (for Lyrics) and push it.
- b. Click on the first eighth note in the vocal line. The lyric cursor will jump to the beginning of the first lyric syllable. Type the letter “W”.
- c. At the end of the same line, find the blue lyric syllable, “noats”. Click the quarter note above it and hit the delete key. Now type “fl” and click outside of the staff.



- d. Move to the next line down and correct the words “otr” and “tmst” in the top lyric line using the same method as you did before.
- e. Hit the down-arrow key to move to the next line down. Now correct the words “noat” and “yon”. Use the left and right-arrow key to move along the lyric line.
- f. In the next measure, the word “bough” in the top line was associated with the wrong note. It should be attached to the half note. Use the arrow keys to position your cursor at the beginning of the word. Click and drag right to highlight the word “bough” and with the Ctrl key down, hit the “X” key to cut it to clipboard.



- g. Click on the half note to the left and when the cursor drops down, hold the Ctrl button down and hit the “V” key. The word “bough” will be pasted into position.
- h. Click out of the staff line. Press the “L” button in the toolbar to exit Lyric mode. Restore error measures by going to View > Show and checking “Error measures”. Restore normal playback by going to the Playback menu and click on “Play as written” to turn it off. Most settings in SmartScore remain on until turned off.

NOTE: You may want to experiment with changing the *Andante* tempo marking. Hit the Esc key (Properties tool), click on the marking and adjust BPM value.

### 2.2.8 Editing Guitar

SmartScore includes some very useful and powerful features for solo guitar music including recognition and editing of tablatures.

- a. Push the **Recognition** button. In the *Begin Recognition* window, push **Add Files to List**. Double click on the file, GUITAR.TIF in the SmartScore folder to add the file to the list of recognized pages.

NOTE: Solo guitar and violin music often contain fingering numbers. You may want to prevent SmartScore from interpreting fingerings as tuplets. To ignore tuplets, uncheck **Tuplets** in the Recognition Options area. Press **Begin Recognition**.

### Adjust default tempo

The original tempo is marked “*Poco allegro*”. SmartScore recognized the word, “*Allegro*” which has a default tempo of 150 bpm. It’s too fast.



- a. Push the Properties tool and click on the mark, *Allegro* in Measure. Move the slider to change the speed to something slower.

NOTE: With “**Apply this tempo to all similar marks**” checked, all *existing* marks of *Allegro* will become updated to the new tempo after you push **OK**.

### Editing three or more voices

Solo classical guitar and solo violin scores are unique in the world of published music. In most music, usually no more than two voicelines are present; each being distinguished by notes having opposite stem directions.

- b. Save the file with the default name given.
- c. Notice measures have notes in three colors, including green. The green notes represent the third or tertiary voice. Push spacebar to **Play**. Hit spacebar again to **Stop**.

### Controlling part names

The part name (*Nylon Guitar*) overlaps the first measure. To turn off part names, go to **View > Show > Part Names** submenu. Check “*Don’t Show*”.

### Assigning different instruments to voices

- d. Open the **Playback Console (Ctrl + 9 / Cmnd + 9)**. Click into Instrument selection for **Voice 2**. In the Instrument pull-down menu, change *Nylon String Guitar* to *Tango Accordion*.
- e. Change **Voice 3** to Acoustic Bass or some other instrument.
- f. Push the spacebar and listen to how contrapuntal voices become more distinct when they are assigned to different instrument sounds.

### Converting notation to guitar TAB

- a. Select Properties tool from the Toolbar.
- b. Click on the yellow triangle to the left of any staff line.
- c. In the Staff Properties window, click in the “*Apply Staff Type*” checkbox. Select “**6-string guitar TAB**” from the pull down menu.

SmartScore also recognizes TAB-formatted scores. For more details, refer to Section 3.5.1, "Recognition Options" "Recognize Tablature, Percussion and Split Systems (Codas)".

### **2.2.9 Macintosh / Windows shortcut conventions**

Most SmartScore keyboard shortcuts are identical on both Windows and Macintosh computers. For Macs with a single mouse button, the right-click function is performed version by holding down the “**alt**” (Option) key and clicking the mouse.

---

## 3)

# Scanning and Recognition

---

### 3.1 Preparing to Scan Music

To scan right away, locate the SCAN button in the toolbar or Navigator and push it.



Start Scan (Toolbar)



Start Scan (Navigator)

If your scanner responds well to the SCAN command, you can jump to Section 3.5, "Recognition Sequence" on page 24. To learn more about scanning options in SmartScore, turn to Section 3.2, "Scanning in Macintosh®" on page 19.

If you are scanning with a Mac running Snow Leopard (OS 10.4) or later and your scanner fails to respond to the SCAN command, jump to Section 3.2, "Scanning in Macintosh®" on page 19.

Scanning in SmartScore on Mac computers is not quite as straightforward as Windows. Mac users, jump to "Scanning in Macintosh®", Section 3.2, on page 19.

#### 3.1.1 Scanner Drivers

SmartScore uses "3rd-party drivers" for scanner control. These drivers are installed from the CDs packaged with your scanner. Windows drivers are usually **WIA** or **TWAIN**. If you encounter problems when attempting to scan, locate your scanner manufacturers' website, download and install the most recent scanner driver before calling Musitek Technical Support.

NOTE: Some users may have to select "Custom" from their scanner installers.

#### 3.1.2 Selecting your scanner driver in SmartScore (Windows only)

- a. Go to **File > Scan Music > Select Scanner**. Click on the driver name that corresponds to your scanner.

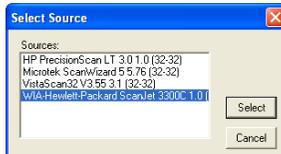


FIGURE 3 - 1: File > Scan Music > Select Scanner

**Windows Users:** Select the “WIA xxx” driver associated with your scanner / all-in-one device. If your scanner fails to respond to the SCAN command, try the TWAIN driver that corresponds to your scanner if one is listed.

### 3.1.3 Choosing a scanner

All scanners are not created equal. Most will work well with SmartScore; some better than others. For an updated list of recommended scanners, visit:

<http://www.musitek.com/bundle.html>

We’ve produced some helpful videos on scanning in SmartScore along with other topics. Visit our video page at:

[www.musitek.com/videos.html](http://www.musitek.com/videos.html)

To read more about scanning, scanning issues and work-arounds, go online to:

[www.musitek.com/scanningnotes.html](http://www.musitek.com/scanningnotes.html)

or see “Scanning Issues” at [www.musitek.com/faqs.html](http://www.musitek.com/faqs.html)

## 3.2 Scanning in Macintosh®

Macs running Apple OS 10.6 (Snow Leopard) or later have scanner drivers imbedded in the operating system. This limits third-party scanning to those devices selected by Apple.

If your scanner does not respond to the “Scan” command, scanning will have to be done outside of SmartScore.

### 3.2.1 Scanning Outside of SmartScore

If your scanner does not respond properly in SmartScore’s scanning interface or if you cannot prevent your scanner from creating dithered/half-toned images, you will be able to create usable images with the scanning software that came with your scanner. Returning to SmartScore, you will be able to **Recognize** these saved images.

- a. Check that your scanner is on and connected to your computer.
  - b. Go to **File > Scan Music > Choose Interface > Your Scanner’s**. When you push the Scan button, your scanner’s software may open up. If not, launch the scanning software application that came with your scanner.:
- Place your music in the scanner as squarely as possible

NOTE: Some scanners, especially lower-cost all-in-one devices have limited settings. If you are unable to locate specific settings described below, choose **Text** or **Documents**. Normally, you will not select “Photos”, “Illustrations” or “Color”.

- Look for **Scan type** or **Output** option. Set scanning to **Grey** (Greyscale).
- Set **Brightness** to -20 to -35% for average printed music.

- Set **Resolution** to 300-400 dpi for average printed music.
- Scan between 300-400 dpi (for average-sized printed music). Scan at higher resolutions for music printed in smaller-than-average print size. Do not exceed 600 dpi.
- In the preview pane, crop around but not into the area containing the music.
- Scan and save multiple-page scores as a **PDF** file.
- Scan and save single pages as *uncompressed TIFF* files. Give a unique filename for each page... e.g. Page1.tif, Page2.tif, etc.

*TIP:* Optimum resolution is achieved when the distance between staff lines is about 20 pixels. In SmartScore’s Image Editor, zoom into the image. Referring to the mouse position readout in the status bar, measure the distance between two lines in a stave (measure white space only).



### 3.2.2 Scanning Orchestral Scores

There are several methods that may be used to scan in oversized orchestral scores. Refer online to:

“[My orchestral score is bigger and wider than my scanner.](#)” found in the Support > FAQ section at [www.musitek.com](http://www.musitek.com)

## 3.3 Using the SmartScore Scanning Interface

- Go to **File > Scan Music > Choose Interface = SmartScore’s**. This will ensure that SmartScore’s scanning environment is activated.
- Push the Scan button found in the Navigator and in the Toolbar or choose **File > Scan Music > Acquire**.



When you start scanning, a low-resolution pre-scan will appear in the Preview window. If your scanner does not respond properly inside SmartScore’s scanning interface, select **File > Scan Music > Choose Interface = Your scanner’s** and try again. If your scanner still fails to respond correctly, turn to “Scanning Outside of SmartScore” on page 19.

### 3.3.1 Enhanced scanning functions

- **Auto Cropping**

If your music extends to the edge of the preview window, uncheck “Cropping” and push “Prescan” to scan again. This will allow for maximum scanning coverage. If cropping is checked, a bounding box will limit the scanning region. If you scan with cropping on, make sure about a 1/4” of clear white space is left on all sides of the music inside the preview image.

- **Auto Deskew**

If the preview appears slightly crooked, push the “Deskew” button to correct. If the preview is very crooked or if some music is cut off, reposition the music in the scanner and scan again.

- **Auto Resolution**

This feature takes the guesswork out of choosing the correct resolution (dpi) setting for each scan. When selected, the image is analyzed and sized in order to obtain an optimum image resolution, thus achieving the highest possible recognition accuracy. Use this whenever possible.

If the preview image appears with white notes on black background, you will be able to invert image in the Image Editor (see Section 3.9, "Image Editor" on page 34).

NOTE: Selecting **Next Page** immediately activates your scanner. Before selecting it, position your next page onto the scanner and wait until the scanner bar resets. If you push too soon, you may get an error message that “Scanner is not ready.”

- c. Push **Next Page** and continue to preview, deskew and scan until you have finished scanning your entire song, project, section or movement. Select **Finish** when done.

NOTE: If the piece you are processing exceeds 10-15 pages, divide it into smaller, discrete sections, e.g. Intro, Part1, Part2, etc.

### 3.3.2 Scanner settings

The following section lists image-enhancement and scanner settings which you can control within the SmartScore scanning interface.

- **Brightness**

The default brightness setting is -35%. For typical printed music, this setting should be fine. If beams smear together and whole and half notes appear closed or “blobbed”, then brighten the scan. If the original music is faded, if it is a weak copy you may want to scan even darker than the default setting. SmartScore wants to see solid, well-defined lines that are neither razor-thin nor smeared together.

- **Resolution**

It is recommended that you use Auto-Resolution whenever possible.

NOTE: When scanning music with staves having different widths (e.g. containing both standard notation and TAB staves or smaller “cue” staff above a piano accompaniment) or if you continuously receive error messages suggesting alternative resolutions, turn Auto-resolution OFF and re-scan at 300 dpi.

If you choose to set resolution manually, turn Auto-Resolution off. For most printed music, the recommended resolution is between 300 and 400 dpi. If the original music is printed in smaller type, you can increase resolution to 400 or 500 dpi. For miniature scores, try 600 dpi. *SmartScore works best with an optimum resolution.* Scanning at too high or too low a resolution will actually reduce recognition accuracy. It is not recommended to scan music below 250 dpi or higher than 600 dpi.

### 3.3.3 Choosing an alternative scanning interface

If your scanner fails to respond properly to the **Scan** command in the SmartScore interface or your scanned image is unacceptable (partially scanned, distorted, etc.) your alternative is to scan using the software provided with your scanner. See Section 3.2.1, "Scanning Outside of SmartScore" on page 19 for details.

## 3.4 Processing PDF files for Recognition

SmartScore will recognize nearly all PDF music files. Before being processed, PDFs are converted to the TIF file format and saved to the default directory. PDF files must be properly pre-scanned to achieve good results. For PDF scanning requirements and procedures, see Section 3.2.1, "Scanning Outside of SmartScore".

*To recognize PDF images of printed music,*



- a. Push the **Open File** button and select "Image" type. Or push one of the **Recognition** buttons in the Toolbar or Navigator. The **Recognize** function is also found under the **File** menu.
- b. After the image is converted from PDF to .TIF, it will open in SmartScore's Image Editor where you can set grayscale threshold levels as well as delete non-notation pages such as the title page and front matter. While this step is recommended, it can be skipped each time or bypassed permanently.



- c. A file-selection window ***Begin Recognition*** will open. This is where you list your pre-scanned files for recognition by selecting them, rearranging them, removing or reordering them.

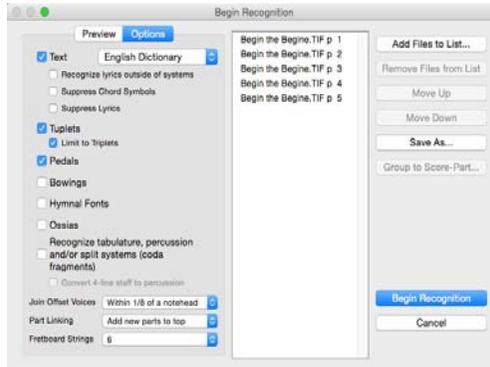


FIGURE 3 - 2: Recognition - Selected Files / Options / Preview

- d. In the ***Begin Recognition*** window, push **Add Files to List**.
- e. Browse to where your images are stored. Click on an image file to select. If more than one page was scanned in the SmartScore scanning interface, the file will appear as a multi-page list.

NOTE: You may click on and drag image icon(s) to the selected files list of the ***Begin Recognition*** window. Some older Windows operating systems may not support drag-and-drop.

- f. Preview pages prior to recognition to check that pages were scanned completely and that no page is severely skewed. Any of these issues will affect recognition results. Select the **Preview** tab and click on each page to view your pre-scanned pages.
- g. Refer to “Recognition Options” on page 25 for details on how recognition options operate.

### 3.4.1 Reordering the File List

Notice that one file may contain many pages. If you happened to have scanned a page out of sequence or if you notice pages out of order (e.g. “Page10” is listed before “Page2”). To reorder the list of pages to be recognized, click on any page and hit **Move Up** or **Move Down**. It will be repositioned. Hitting **Remove Files from List** will cause that page to be taken off the list and will not be recognized.

### 3.4.2 Removing, replacing and re-saving scanned pages

If one page of a scanned group is incorrectly scanned or is missing altogether from a multi-page image file (Page group), you may reselect individual pages to form a new page group.

- a. Select (or drag) the original multi-page file inside the selected files list of the **Begin Recognition** window.
- b. Highlight a page to remove and push **Remove Files from List**.
- c. To add a replacement or additional page to the original page group, select or drag the page(s) to the selected files list.
- d. Reorder pages as necessary.

NOTE: If pages were reordered, added to or deleted from the original image file, you will be able to re-save the newly listed pages.

*To Save a modified list of grouped pages as a new image file,*

- Select all pages so they are highlighted and push Save As.
- Select the existing name to over-write or type in a new name.

### 3.5 Recognition Sequence

When scanning pages is done, choose **Save As and Begin Recognition** to initiate recognition. Or you can choose **Open Pages in Image Editor** to view scanned pages and make alterations to the scanned image (e.g. cropping, deskewing, line drawing, cutting and pasting). Pushing **Cancel** before recognition is complete will exit the process and return you to the main window.

NOTE: Turn to “Image Editor” on page 34 to learn about editing scanned images (**Open Pages in Image Editor**).

To save your scanned image file and begin recognition sequence,

- a. Push the **Save As and Begin Recognition** button.
- b. Browse to a location for saving your SmartScore ENF files. You may wish to add a unique directory at this time.
- c. Give the image file a name. If you are using Windows, the extension “.TIF” will be added automatically.
- d. Push **OK** to begin the recognition process.

The image file you have just saved contains all pages you scanned. The default file type is “Compressed TIFF” (CCITT Type 4), a multi-page, single-file highly-compressed TIFF file format. It will be approximately 10 times smaller than an uncompressed TIFF image file.

**NOTE:** If you are going to open the scanned image in Adobe Photoshop®, you may want to save in the larger, uncompressed TIFF format; Photoshop does not currently support CCITT Type 4 files.



**TIP:** When you **Save** a file to a specific location, SmartScore will continue to save to that directory until you change it. The same is true when you **Open** a file. Remember that SmartScore may look in one directory when opening a file and then go to a different one when saving a file. Once changed, the new file path becomes the default.

### 3.5.1 Recognition Options

The following section describes options you can choose for recognition. When satisfied with your choices, push **Begin Recognition**.

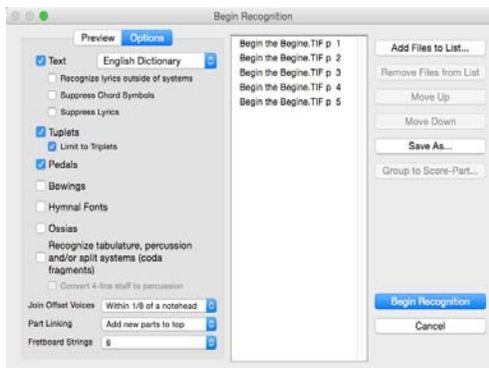


FIGURE 3 - 3: Recognition - Options

**NOTE:** If Recognition fails, refer to “Troubleshooting Scanning and Recognition” on page 31.

- **Text**

Check this box if you wish to recognize lyrics and text in the music.

**TIP:** If you are scanning in single-line parts for the purpose of joining them into a conductor’s score, it is recommended not to recognize text. Otherwise, text from every score-part will be overlaid on the pages of the conductor’s score.



- **Recognize Lyrics Outside of Systems**

Check this box if you are recognizing a score which has one or more lines of lyrics written under the **last** staff line of each system or if it is a single-line score with lyrics underneath the staff. Otherwise, leave unchecked.

- **Suppress Chord Symbols**

When checked, chord symbols and guitar fret diagrams will be ignored. Even if recognized, chord symbols and guitar fret diagrams can still be turned off later. Check only if you are sure you never want chord symbols to appear in your score.

- **Suppress Lyrics**

Check this box if you are recognizing a score which has one or more lines of lyrics written under the last staff line of each system or if it is a single-line score with lyrics underneath the staff. Otherwise, leave unchecked.

- **Tuplets**

Keep this box checked, unless you experience many false positive recognition of tuplets.

- **Limit to Triplets**

When checked, SmartScore will ignore non-triplet tuplets (duples, quintuplets, sextuplets, etc.).

- **Pedals**

If pedal markings are written into the music, check this box.

- **Bowings**

If up/down bowing marks are written into the music, check this box.

- **Hymnal Fonts**

If you are scanning in music from a hymnal (with stubby flags and short stems), check this box. NOTE: “Shaped notes” do not apply.

- **Ossias**

Select if your score has one or more ossias (line above a staff suggesting an alternative passage) that you wish to have recognized.

- **Recognize Tablature, Percussion and Split Systems (Codas)**

Select to recognize TAB (guitar) notation or percussion staves having other than 5 lines per staff.

NOTE: If your music includes a part with 4 lines, it will be recognized as 4-string TAB by default. If the 4-line staff is in fact a percussion part, check “Convert 4-line parts to percussion.”

- If the original score contains a coda system break, it’s important to indicate that prior to recognition. SmartScore will recognize split systems if **Recognize tablature, percussion and split systems** is checked.
- **Join Offset Voices (“Y”)**

Two notes belonging to opposite voices are often offset even though they’re meant to sound at the same time. By default, noteheads of different (colored) voices having no more than 1/8th of a notehead’s space between them will share the same “time event” and will sound simultaneously after recognition and appear in different colors.

- If your music has offset noteheads which are meant to sound simultaneously but generally exceed 1/8-width of a notehead, choose a greater distance. The amount of white space between note heads determines this distance.
- If your music has dense polyphonic texture, like that found in solo guitar music or tightly-spaced orchestral passages, it may be necessary to “tighten up” the allowable distance between offset voices. In these cases, choose a distance of less than 1/4 of a notehead.
- Setting “Join Offset Voices” to “Exactly aligned” will join only those voices with noteheads that are exactly vertically aligned.

For editing details on joining / un-joining offset voices, see Section 4.5.5, "Correcting Vertical Alignment" on page 47).

- **Part linking (Ctrl + “L”)**

When a score is “optimized”, parts (i.e. stafflines) will appear only when they are meant to be played. Otherwise, the parts remain invisible. Optimized systems can be referred to as either “collapsed” or “expanded”. Usually, parts are added to the top of a system, e.g. after a piano introduction, the vocal line will appear above the piano part. This “top-down” arrangement is the default. However, some scores may have parts added to systems in a “bottom-up” fashion, e.g. existing staves are bumped upwards. If your score is structured in this way, change default to “**Add Parts to Bottom**”. Orchestral scores, being grouped by instruments, may have no pattern. For more information on part linking and maintaining playback continuity, see "Part Linking (Ctrl+L)", Section 7.7.7, on page 143

- **Fretboard Strings**

The default fretboard for recognition is the six-string guitar. If your music has ukulele fretboards (4 strings) or some other configuration, change the selection to the correct number of strings.

### 3.5.2 Post-Recognition

Scanned pages will be saved as a .TIF file prior to recognition. When recognition is complete, a System Report will list the number of parts found in the largest and smallest systems. If any of these do not agree with the original music, investigate the cause before spending a lot of time editing the score... it could be difficult to restructure your score later on.

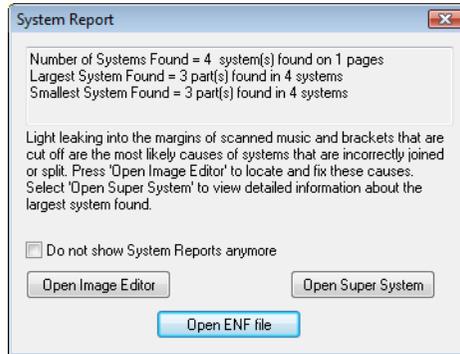


FIGURE 3 - 4: Post-recognition System Report

- Normally, you will select **Open SmartScore file**. You can accept or change the name and the destination directory. Press **Save** to save and open the file.
- If you selected **Open Super System**, you will be able to view a list of the largest system. You can locate and edit any system that contains an incorrect number of parts. See for more details.
- If you selected **Open Image Editor**, the scanned image will open in the Image Editor where you can correct certain flaws in the scanned image. See Section 3.9, "Image Editor" on page 34 for more details.

A checkbox allows you to skip viewing the System Report in the future. To reset this option, go to **Edit > Program Preferences > User Interface > Recognition**.

Another window will prompt you to Unify Key and Time signatures. Refer to for more details.

### 3.6 Scanning Part Scores (Score-Parts)

SmartScore allows you to process and combine scanned pages of solo parts, duets, trios or quartets and play them back simultaneously. They may also be recombined into a conductor's score.



*TIP:* If you are scanning in Score-parts for the purpose of joining solo parts into a conductor's score, it is recommended not to recognize text.



*scan and combine Score-parts into one ENF file,*

- a. Scan in all pages for each part. For easiest identification, give a unique name or number for pages belonging to one part, e.g. Flute\_Pg1, Flute\_Pg2 and Guitar\_Pg1, Guitar\_Pg2, etc.
- b. In the **Begin Recognition** window, arrange files in order of parts then pages: e.g. Part1/Page1, Part1/Page2, etc.

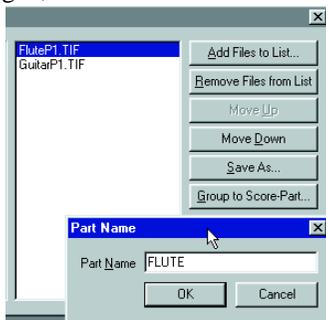


FIGURE 3 - 5: Grouping pages to Score-Parts

- c. Highlight the first set of pages that make up the first Score-Part.
- d. Push **Group to Score-Part**. In the Part Name window, give the selected pages belonging to a score-part a unique name.
- e. When all pages are properly grouped to score-parts, push the **Begin Recognition** button.

SmartScore will internally organize score-parts following recognition. The ENF window will display pages for the first part followed by pages of the next part. Parts will play back simultaneously.

### 3.7 Recognition Accuracy

If recognition accuracy is not as good as what you expected, examine the image up close by zooming into the image pane of your ENF view. You may also view your scanned pages in SmartScore's Image Editor (**File > Open > Image file type**).

Determine the following by examining your image file close up:

- If large black areas are pitted with holes (stippled) instead of being solid black, your scan is probably half-toned / dithered and will not recognize well. If you are unsure,

send the .TIF file to [tech@musitek.com](mailto:tech@musitek.com). We will confirm whether or not it is half-toned. If you were scanning from inside SmartScore's scanning interface, scan instead using your scanner's software observing the guidelines found here: "Scanning Outside of SmartScore" on page 19. For more information on half-toning, refer online to "Dithering" in the FAQ section at [www.musitek.com](http://www.musitek.com) under the Support tab.

- If objects such as note stems and staff lines are broken or thin or if objects appear weak and lack clarity, re-scan with -30% to -40% decreased brightness to fill in gaps.
- If edges of objects are "stair-stepped" or ragged, it may mean, re-scan with the Auto-Resolution setting checked (On) or increase scanning resolution manually. Optimum distance between horizontal stafflines is 20 pixels. You may use the cursor and readout in the Status Bar (pixel coordinates) to measure exact width of a typical staff line.
- If the source document is poorly printed or is faded and weak, try locating a better print copy of the music.

**NOTE:** Other scan problems such as crooked or offset pages can be corrected in SmartScore's Image Editor. See "Image Editing Tools", Section 3.9.2, on page 34.

Following recognition, guitar chord fret symbols may sometimes overlay chord names recognized as text: Raw or "dumb" text chord names will not transpose. To remove "dumb" text fields, use **Nudge** mode (**Shift**) and drag the control handles of each text field upwards. Use the **Select** tool and "group delete" all selected text fields.



Recognition accuracy is directly related to the quality of the source document as well as the quality of the scanned image. Very cheap scanners may always produce poor or half-toned images. Remember the saying: "Garbage in / Garbage out". If after examining the image and consulting the Troubleshooting chart, you are still unable to achieve good recognition results, we invite you to send us your TIFF file(s) for detailed analysis by our technicians.

You can attach your image (TIFF) files to e-mail along with a short description of the problem you experienced to the following address: **[tech@musitek.com](mailto:tech@musitek.com)**. We will reply as soon as possible. Most likely, we will be able to locate the problem and offer a solution or recommendation.

### 3.8 Troubleshooting Scanning and Recognition

**Table 1: Scanning and Recognition Troubleshooting**

Problem	Probable Cause	Fix
Scanner does not operate.	Scanner drivers not installed. (Win only)	Install WIA or TWAIN software from scanner manufacturer’s site.
	Scanner not selected. (Win only)	Ensure proper scanner driver is selected ( <b>File &gt; Scan Music &gt; Choose Scanner</b> ).
	Scanner driver is incompatible with computer operating system. (Mac)	Scan outside of SmartScore. See “Scanning Outside of SmartScore” on page 19.
	Scanner not connected or not turned on.	Check cabling and power. Use scan test program if available.
“This page should be scanned at xxx dpi. Re-scan or Accept.	Staff widths not consistent. Music contains cue, TAB or percussion staves.	Re-scan in SmartScore’s scanning interface with <i>Auto Resolution</i> = off.
	Scanner model used does not support infinitely variable DPI (only scans in large increments).	Re-scan with <i>Auto Resolution</i> = off. Manually set resolution acceptable to scanner (300 to 600 dpi).
Printed area containing music is too wide or too long to scan on a standard sized scanner.	Actual image size of the music is what counts, not the size of the paper or page.	Refer to “Scanning Issues” section of <a href="http://www.musitek.com/faqs.html">www.musitek.com/faqs.html</a> for work-around.
		Reduce original size using photocopier.

**Table 1: Scanning and Recognition Troubleshooting**

Problem	Probable Cause	Fix
<p>“Recognition failed for this page.”</p>	<p>Scanner set to screen resolution of 72 dpi.</p>	<p>Scan again accepting <b>Auto-resolution</b> settings for best results.</p>
	<p>Resolution of scanner set too low.</p>	<p>Manually set resolution to 300-600 dpi. Scan again.</p>
	<p>Page was scanned with too light a setting.</p>	<p>Re-scan with -30% to -35% brightness.</p>
	<p>Scanner was forced to create a black &amp; white image with “dithering”.</p>	<p>Re-scan in <b>Your Scanner’s interface:</b> Greyscale / 350 dpi.</p>
	<p>Music not fully scanned or is severely skewed.</p>	<p>Re-scan making sure all the music is selected. Scan music straight or use “<b>Deskew</b>” function.</p>
	<p>Image too large for selected resolution.</p>	<p>Re-scan ensuring <i>Auto Resolution = On</i>. Accept setting. If recognition is poor, re-scan with Auto-Resolution off. Reset to 350 dpi.</p>
<p>Scanner hangs or crashes.</p>	<p>Driver conflict.</p>	<p>Ensure latest scanner drivers are installed.</p>
		<p>Scan outside of SmartScore using software that came with your scanner.</p>

**Table 1: Scanning and Recognition Troubleshooting**

Problem	Probable Cause	Fix
Poor recognition results.	One or more scanning issues creating less-than-optimum image quality.	Refer to "Recognition Accuracy", Section 3.7, on page 29
	Missing barlines due to light obscuring right margin or to right margin having been cut off during scanning.	Open image file in Image Editor. Use <b>Select</b> Tool to delete obscured regions and the Line Draw tool to restore barlines on right side of systems.
	Image too small for selected resolution.	Scan again accepting <b>Auto-resolution</b> settings for best results.
	Note stems “razor thin” due to laser print output.	Open .tif image in Image Editor and apply darker thresholding.
	Handwritten or non-standard notation. Poor print.	Scan well-printed, standard-sized sheet music.
	Poorly printed music.	Decrease brightness level. Find better original.
	Image not straight (skewed).	Open file in Image Editor ( <b>File &gt; Open &gt; Image</b> ). Use <b>Deskew</b> tool to straighten each page.
	Stafflines and note stems of canned file are broken or too thin.	Re-scan page(s) with decreased brightness setting.

## 3.9 Image Editor

### 3.9.1 Opening files in the Image Editor

Following the final scan of music pages, you can choose to “Open Image Editor”. This choice will stop the recognition process and open the scanned pages in the Image Editor. At any time, you can open and edit an existing image file with the “Open” command.

The Image Editor allows you to manually draw in missing system brackets and/or barlines prior to recognition. You can erase or add details as well as being able to delete large areas of unwanted material from the image.



After touching up scanned pages, recognition can be launched directly from the Image Editor by pushing the “Recognition” button in the Toolbar. Launching recognition will ask you to first save the image with a new name.

- Loading a prescanned image file

*To open an image file you have previously scanned,*



- a. Press the **Open** button on the Navigator or choose **Open (Ctrl + O)** (**Cmd + O** for Mac) from the **File** menu.
- b. Change **Files of Type** pull-down menu to **Image Files**.
- c. Browse and highlight an image file from the listed saved files. Press **Open**.

### 3.9.2 Image Editing Tools

- Image Information

Select **View > Image Information** to display characteristics about the current scanned image including resolution, file type and page size.

- Zoom



To Zoom in and out click the Zoom Tool in the Toolbar (**Ctrl + Q**). Click inside the image will increase the scale of your view (Zoom In), while right-click (**alt / option + click for Mac**) will decrease the scale of your view (Zoom Out).

- Page



To view pages of an image file, use the paging buttons in the Toolbar or select **Next Page/ Previous Page** from the **View** menu.

- Image Toolbar

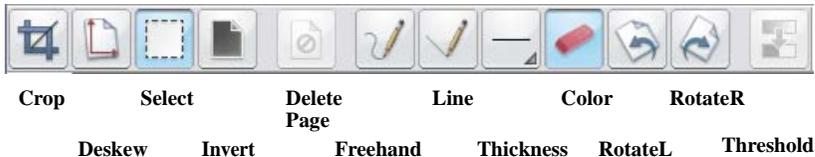


FIGURE 3 - 6: Image Editor Toolbar

### 3.9.3 Page Tools

- **Select**

Used for selecting a region for cropping, deleting, cutting or copying.

- **Crop**

*To crop an image file (trimming unwanted portions of your image from outside a marked frame),*

- Press the **Select** button in the Image Toolbar.
  - With your mouse, drag a box around the area you wish to keep. If you want to extend the cropping region outside of the display, keep dragging; the page will scroll as you drag up or down.
  - To adjust the marked bounded area, move your cursor over a boundary line, click and drag the boundary to a new position.
  - Select **Crop** from the Edit menu OR press the Crop button in the Image Toolbar. The resulting image will be reduced to the area inside the bounded frame. Remember to Save when done.
- Correcting Skew

Page through each scanned image and check for relative straightness of each image page. If a page appears tilted or *skewed*, recognition accuracy will be compromised. The **Deskew** tool rotates the image slightly to correct skewed pages and will optimize recognition accuracy.

- Press the **Deskew** button in the Image Toolbar or select **Deskew** from the **Edit** menu.
- Position the cursor over a staff line. Starting from the left side, click and drag the mouse along the length of the staff line. A red “skew angle” line will display as you drag the mouse. When you are certain the red “skew angle” line parallels the staff line, let go. The page will automatically straighten. Repeat for each page. Remember to **Save** when done.

NOTE: If the page becomes incorrectly rotated, undo with **Ctrl + z / Cmnd + z** for *Mac* (or select **Edit > Undo**).

- **Invert**

If the image you open in SmartScore is white-on-black (instead of the normal black-on-white), then you should reverse the image output in your scanning software. SmartScore defaults to 0=white polarity.

If your scanned image appears white on black, choose **Edit > Invert** or choose the **Invert** button from the Toolbar.

- **Delete Page**

If there is more than one scanned page in the image file, the **Delete Page** function is active. Use it to remove poorly scanned or duplicated pages. To re-scan and restore deleted pages, see Section 3.4.2, "Removing, replacing and re-saving scanned pages" on page 24.

- **Freehand Draw (Brush)**

To draw free hand lines in your image file, select **Brush** from the **Edit** menu OR press the Brush button in the Image Toolbar. Choose a line width then click and drag to paint.

- **Line Draw**

Some printed scores have weak or missing stafflines and/or brackets that can create problems during recognition and may result in missing or incorrectly bracketed systems. Sometimes, by accident, brackets and/or barlines are cut off during scanning. If this is the case, you can manually draw in staff line and brackets or enhance their thicknesses.

To restore cut-off or missing system brackets,

- a. Select **Edit > Line** or choose **Line Draw** in the Image Toolbar.
- b. Push the **Pen Color** push button in the Image Toolbar, if necessary, to choose Black Color.
- c. In the **Width** pull-down selector, choose a fairly wide thickness (10-20 pixels).

- d. Click and drag the mouse to draw a line along the missing or broken bracket along the left margin of the music.

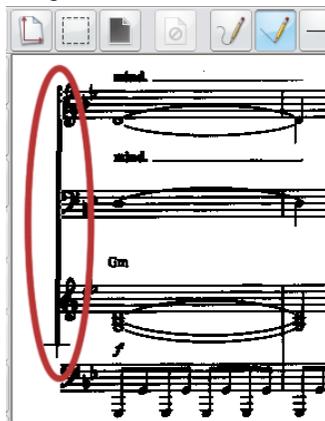
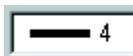


FIGURE 3 - 7: Using Line Draw tool to restore missing bracket

- e. When finished modifying the image. Select **File > Save As** and give it a name. You may then **Recognize** the file with corrections.

- **Line / Brush Thickness**



To change the width of brush or line tool, select a new size from the Width menu in the Image Toolbar. Select from 1 to 50 pixels.

- Black / White Color toggle (Eraser)

Push the “Eraser” button to activate white color. Push again to deactivate it for black color. Or choose **Pen Color > Black** or **White** from the **Edit** menu.

- **Rotate Left / Rotate Right**

To rotate an image file (for landscape formatted scores or upside down scans), go to the **Edit** menu and highlight **Rotate** OR press one of the Rotate buttons in the Image Toolbar.

- Rotate the image Left (90 degree rotation).
- Rotate the image Right (90 degree rotation).
- Select **Edit > Rotate > Any** to rotate at angles other than 90 degrees.
- **Thresholding**

If note stems and/or staff lines are “razor thin”, recognition will be improved by darkening the image. Use this feature to manually convert grey images to black & white using a variable threshold (75% lighter to 75% darker). Many PDF music files and sheets output from laser printers have thin lines (1 pixel wide.) Move the threshold slider far to the right in cases of “razor thin” lines.

- **Begin Recognition**



After modifying the image, you can save and begin recognition of it by pushing the “Begin recognition” button in the Toolbar.

### 3.9.4 Cut / Copy and Paste functions

- **Cut (Edit > Cut)**

To cut an area from the scanned image, hit **Delete** button. Or use the **Select** tool and drag a box. Cut with **Ctrl + “X”**.

- **Copy**

To copy an area without removing it from the image, use the **Select** tool and drag a box with the mouse. Select **Edit > Copy (Ctrl + C (Win) / Cmnd + C (Mac))**.

- **Paste**

To Paste the cut or copied region into an image file, select **Edit > Paste (Ctrl + V / Cmnd + V (Mac))**. The cut or copied section will drop into the image. With the mouse, drag the fragment anywhere within the image and release the left mouse button. To fix the fragment in place, click outside the pasted fragment.

## 4)

# Playback

### 4.1 Working with the Aria Player and Garritan sounds

SmartScore X<sup>2</sup> is configured to automatically open both the Playback Console and the Aria Player when a new file is opened or recognized.



FIGURE 4 - 1: Aria player with SmartScore Playback Console

*To load preset instruments for playback,*

- In the Aria player, select one of several instrument presets by clicking into the lower left corner of the “Ensemble” window.
- Click on “SmartScore” and select “All\_Piano”. All channels will play a Grand Piano sound. Other combinations can be selected from “SmartScore” preset list.

*To load individual instruments,*

- Click on any of the 16 instrument/channel slots in the Aria player.
- Select an instrument from one of seven instrument groups under “SmartScore”.

**IMPORTANT:** The Aria player will play only those channels that are displayed in the channel list of SmartScore's Playback Console.

Use the transport controls in the Playback Console or Mini Console to control playback. The spacebar can be used to start and stop playback, but not when the focus is on the Aria player. To activate spacebar for playback, click outside of the Aria player window.

Volume, Pan, Mute, Solo and Transpose pitch controls are all active in Playback Console.

If a part is not playing back or is playing the wrong sound, make sure you have the right instrument correctly assigned to each instrument/channel slot. Remember that only those channels listed in SmartScore's Playback Console will sound in the Aria player.

NOTE: Instrument names in the Playback Console are not active when using the Aria Player. Only those instruments loaded in the Aria player are activated.

#### 4.1.1 Notes on working with the Aria player

- **Manipulating playback windows**

Both the Aria and Playback Console windows are "floating" and can be easily moved out of the way when editing the ENF notation file. When either window is closed, current instrument settings are saved. In order to reassign instruments, playback windows will need to be reopened.



To reopen Playback Console, push the "Console" button in the lower toolbar.



To reopen Aria player, push the VST or AU button in the lower toolbar.

To exit Aria player and revert to General MIDI Instrument playback, select **General MIDI** or **MIDI Mapper** from "MIDI Devices" under the Playback menu. This will enable you to insert multiple instrument changes. For details, see "Changing instrument sounds on the fly", Section 4.5.4, on page 47.

The Aria player is loaded with useful features including effects and the ability to add more Garritan sounds. The Aria user manual can be found under the **HELP** menu > *SmartScore manual (PDF)* > *Aria Player for SmartScore X2*.

- **Burning Audio to DVD with the Aria player**

We recommended using Aria for playback whenever you save to an audio file or burn playback audio to DVD.



For information on saving to audio files or burning audio to DVD, refer to Chapter "Recording to Audio (Save as file / Burn to CD)", Section 10.14, on page 212.

## 4.2 Quick Playback Tricks

- a. Press the spacebar to start playback. Press spacebar again to pause. Press again to resume play. Press the comma key (“,”) to rewind to start point.
- b. You can change the instrument sound of a part anywhere within the piece. Press the “Program Change” button in the ENF toolbar and position the down arrow of your mouse on the measure and beat of the staff for which you wish to change instruments. Left-click and select a new instrument sound. For details, see “Changing instrument sounds on the fly”, Section 4.5.4, on page 47.



NOTE: Instrument change is only functional when **General MIDI** is selected under the *Playback > MIDI Device* menu. Aria player does not support instrument change.

- c. The Mini-Console transport controls Play, Rewind and Stop. The “spring-loaded” slider will accelerate or decelerate playback depending on how far the slider is dragged. The slider will snap back to the default tempo once it is released.



FIGURE 4 - 1: Mini-Console

### 4.2.1 Playing back a selected section



The quickest way to play back a snippet of the score is to use the “Select” tool and drag the mouse over a region of the page while holding down the **right** mouse button (**Alt + click** for Mac). Measures selected for playback will high-light light blue. Hit **Space bar** to play.



FIGURE 4 - 2: Selecting measures for limited playback

For playing larger sections and for looping, go to **Playback** menu > **Set Play Range**.

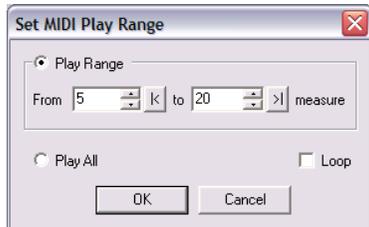


FIGURE 4 - 3: Set Playback Range

- d. In the **From** field, choose a starting measure. Then select an end point in the **To** pull-down box.
- e. To repeat playback over the range, check the **Loop** box.

### 4.3 Playback Console

The **Playback Console** is opened from a button in the Toolbar, by holding down **Ctrl + 9** (Win) / **Cmd + 9** (Mac) or by selecting **Playback console**. from the **Playback** menu. *T*

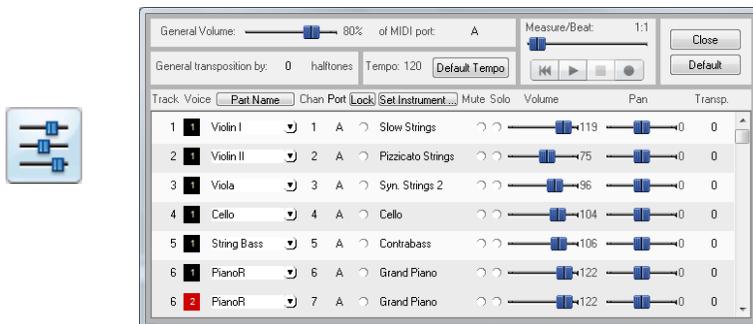


FIGURE 4 - 4: Playback Console

**NOTE:** Channel numbers, tempo, volume, pan, mute, solo and transpose pitch controls in the Playback Console all function normally when the Aria player is activated or when General MIDI playback is activated.

Instrument assignments in the Playback Console are ignored whenever the Aria player is activated. Instruments assigned in the Aria player will respond only in channels that correspond to those in the Playback Console.

### 4.3.1 Playback Console controls

The playback transport controls works exactly as the **Mini-Console**. The **General Volume** slider controls overall volume. **Tempo** controls default tempo (if no metronome value was assigned in ENF). **Measure/Beat** slider resets playback position to desired measure and beat.

Each horizontal MIDI track is linked to a contrapuntal voiceline found in a staff. Tracks are grouped with light or dark grey shading representing one part / staff line. Each track has its controls arrayed in columns:

- Column 1 (**Track**): Indicates the MIDI track assigned to the staff. MIDI Tracks are assigned automatically and cannot be changed.
- Column 2 (**Voice**): Lists the contrapuntal voice number (1 thru 4) given to each voice-line. Voice numbers appear inside colored boxes representing one of 4 possible voices (black, red, green and blue).
- Column 3 (**Part Name**): Each track (part) is linked to a Part Name. Part names are created in the **System Manager**.
- Column 4 (**Channel**): SmartScore automatically assigns a unique MIDI channel to each track whenever possible. Since MIDI allows for only 16 channels, channel numbers may become repeated. Channel numbers can be edited manually by clicking inside the Channel number field.

NOTE: If the part contains more than one contrapuntal voice, you will see more than one instrument channel assigned to that part. For more information see "Working with Contrapuntal Voices", Section 7.9, on page 148.

- Column 5 (**Port**) displays the current port (device) to which the MIDI track is being sent. If more than one MIDI device is available, the port assignment can be edited by clicking inside the Port field.
- Column 6 (**Lock**): You may choose to lock the MIDI Channel of one or more parts to keep them from being changed dynamically.
- Column 7 (**MIDI Instrument**): Every track is assigned a MIDI Instrument. The default instrument is "Grand Piano". Some recognized scores, depending on their structure, may have other instruments assigned.

**Set Instrument:** This button will open the Instrument Settings window which is designed to reallocated MIDI Channels and to save and load custom MIDI instrument settings.

- Column 8/9 (**Mute / Solo**): buttons control whether a track should be muted while all other tracks play or soloed, muting all other tracks.

- Column 10 (**Volume**): This slider controls the default volume of each track.
- Column 11 (**Pan**): This slider controls the Left/Right balance for each track.
- Column 12 (Transpose): Each track can have its playback transposed up or down. Note that transposed instruments will already reflect a transposed playback value to compensate for correct pitch.

## 4.4 Dynamics and Articulations

For detailed information on Dynamic and Articulations palettes, see "Articulations palette", Section 7.6.2, on page 127 or "Dynamics Palette", Section 7.6.3, on page 133.

### 4.4.1 Tuplets and Slurs (Legatos)

While in the **Insert** mode, select a triplet ("**T**" key) from the "Notes" palette or select Legato from the "Articulations" palette.

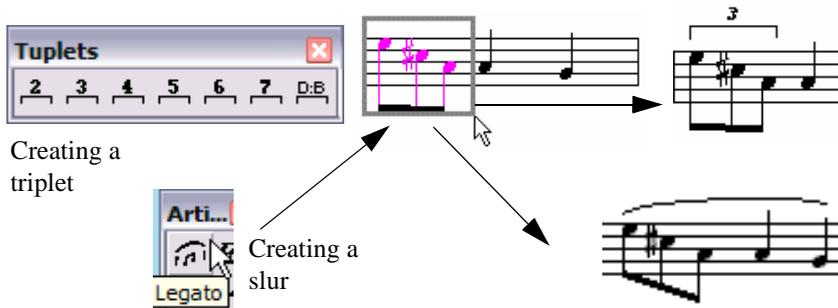


FIGURE 4 - 5: Creating a Triplet or Slur (legato)

- Click and drag down to insert the triplet or legato above the notes to be selected.
- Click and drag up to insert the triplet or legato below the notes to be selected.

*To delete a triplet or articulation*

- Ctrl+click** on it, press the "X" key then click again on the object. Or use the Select tool ("O" key) to highlight one or more triplets and/or legatos.
- Once selected, push the **Delete** key.

**NOTE:** To resize or move a triplet bracket, use **Nudge** mode and drag the control point located on either end of the triplet.

If your score contains many repeated beamed triplets, they will automatically become filled in after you insert two identical sets of triplets. A dialog will appear asking if you want to apply triplets to similar beamed groupings. This includes "implied" triplets.

## 4.5 Voices and Playback

Control of contrapuntal voices is key to proper playback of your score.

### 4.5.1 Voice Visibility



To view contrapuntal voices as colors, push the **Voice Visibility** button in the Toolbar. Each ENF Part (each staffline of the score) can contain a maximum of 4 voices (represented by 4 colors, black, red, green and blue). For scores to play back correctly, it is important that voices appear correct and be properly manipulated. See "Working with Contrapuntal Voices", Section 7.9, on page 148 for additional details about editing voices.

### 4.5.2 Voice Splitting (Select + "H")

Music ministers and choir directors will find this tool extremely handy: Most hymnals and many choral scores group voices into 2-note chord clusters (SA/TB) instead of opposite note stems for each voice. SmartScore treats chord clusters as a single contrapuntal voice. Using the voice-splitting tool, you can split two-note clusters into separate voices (black and red) where each voice will have a unique instrument sound and each voiceline can be extracted to a separate document (See "Extracting Voices", Section 7.4.4, on page 116 for more details on extracting voices).

*To split all two-note clusters into two independent voices,*



- Hit the "O" key or **Select** button to activate the Select tool.
- Select Ctrl+A (Select all) to highlight all symbols in the document.
- Press the "H" key. This will separate two-note clusters into 2 voices.



FIGURE 4 - 6: Splitting two-note chords into 2 voices

**TIP:** Only two note clusters will split. If you wish to split clusters containing three or more notes, delete the least desirable note(s) from the cluster ("Z" key and "X" key) until you are left with two notes in each cluster.



### 4.5.3 Assigning instruments to voices

Assigning unique MIDI instruments adds richness and allows the user to distinguish contrapuntal voices during playback. There are two areas where you can change MIDI instrument assignments for voices: inside the Playback Console and inside the System Manager.

*To change an instrument assignment of a voice in the Playback Console,*

- a. Push the **Playback Console** button in the Toolbar to open it. The console may be opened with quick-keys (**Ctrl+9 / Cmd+9**) or from the menu by selecting **Playback > Console**.

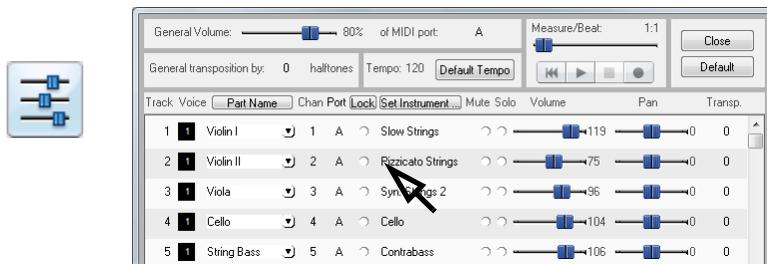


FIGURE 4 - 7: Changing MIDI instrument of a voice in Playback Console

- b. In any of the **Voice** column, click to select a new MIDI instrument.

*To change an instrument assignment of a voice in the System Manager,*

- a. Open the System Manager (**Ctrl+M**) or select **System Manager** from **Edit** menu. All staves are displayed in horizontal rows as “Parts”. Voices are arranged in columns above each part (1 thru 4).

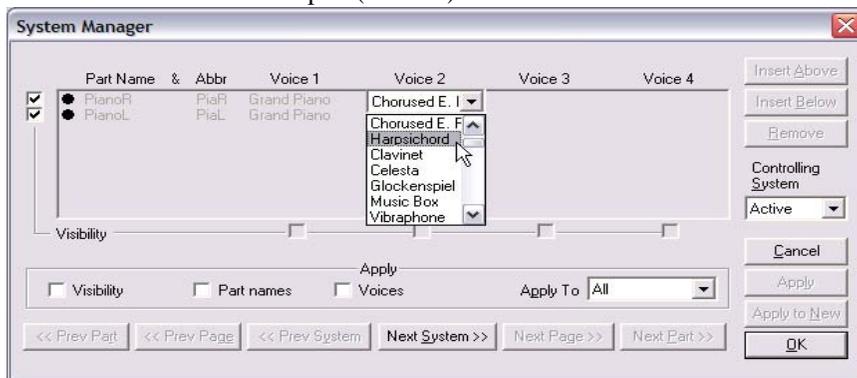


FIGURE 4 - 8: Changing MIDI instrument of a voice in System Manager

- b. Find the voice number within the part you want to change. Click the MIDI instrument name assigned to that voice in the pull down menu. Select an alternative instrument. During playback, you will hear voices stand out from other voices provided you chose instruments with different timbres.

#### 4.5.4 Changing instrument sounds on the fly



You can change instrument sounds anywhere in the score by applying a Program Change to a selected voices within any given measure.

*To apply a Program Change in the ENF notation view,*

- a. Push the “Instrument Change” button in the ENF Toolbar.
- b. Position the note-arrow on the first note where the change should occur.
- c. Select a new instrument sound for that voice. If more than one voice is present in the measure, you will need to select the voice to which you want to apply the change.

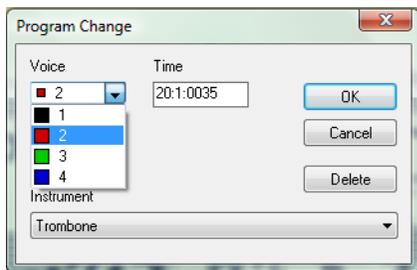


FIGURE 4 - 9: Correcting offset voices not “glued” after recognition.

#### 4.5.5 Correcting Vertical Alignment

In printed music, noteheads belonging to different voices may appear side-by-side even though they are meant to sound simultaneously. During recognition, horizontal distances between offset noteheads are measured and a decision is made whether or not to join (or glue) notes to the same *vertical event*. It is possible that offset notes will not become glued due to excessive distance between the noteheads. It is also possible that notes will become incorrectly glued if they are too close. The default distance for joining noteheads to the same vertical event is 1/8th of a note head. These distances can be adjusted prior to recognition. See "Recognition Options", Section 3.5.1, on page 25 for details on resetting the distance for joining notes.

Following recognition, check that Voice Visibility is on (See "Voice Visibility", Section 4.5.1, on page 45). If two notes with opposing stems both appear black and are meant to play simultaneously, they can be aligned as follows:

*To vertically align offset voices,*

- Use the Select tool ("O" key) and highlight notes or rests that are horizontally offset (likely, they will both be black).
- Press the "Y" key to group the selected, offset notes into a single vertical event. Selected voices may move a bit and one should turn red.

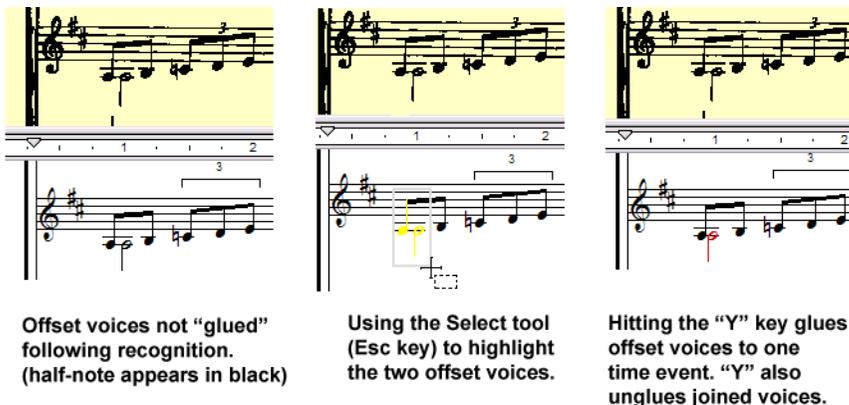


FIGURE 4 - 10: Correcting offset voices not "glued" after recognition.

Similarly, if you see notes that belong in a single voice each displaying a different color (most likely black and red) and nearly touching, they are joined to the same vertical event and can easily be "unglued"...

*To "Unglue" offset notes which are not intended to play simultaneously,*

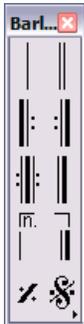
- With the Select tool ("O" key), carefully select the incorrectly glued notes (NOTE: they will each have different colors). Be sure to select only the notes which are incorrectly joined.
- Hit the "Y" key. Joined notes separate and change color. Select again and hit the "Y" key once more to rejoin.

See "Join Offset Voices" in "Recognition Options", Section 3.5.1, on page 25 to reset default distances prior to recognition. See also "Working with Contrapuntal Voices", Section 7.9, on page 148 for more information on editing voices and their affect on score playback.

## 4.6 Repeats

SmartScore will repeat properly-marked sections including multiple repeats and repeated endings. Also, playback can jump forward or jump back when properly marked. For more information, see "Jumps", Section 4.8, on page 52.

*To insert a repeat barline, repeat measure or any other repeat symbol,*



- Toggle the “C” key to enter **Insert** mode. Select any repeat symbol from “Barlines & Repeats” palette and click to place it.

*To change any current barline to a repeat barline,*

- Select a repeat barline from the “Barlines” palette. Click on any existing barline to change it to the selected barline.

*To delete any barline,*

- **Quick-select** (Ctl+click) on a barline (or select any barline from the “Barlines” palette). Hit the “X” key and click on the barline to delete it.

**NOTE:** Do not delete a barline at the end of a system to change it; the following measures will become reformatted. See "Deleting numbered endings and barlines at the end of systems", Section 4.7.1, on page 51.

*To insert a “Repeat Previous Measure” mark,*



- a. Select the **Repeat Previous Measure** mark from palette.
- b. In **Insert** mode, click into an empty measure.

All notation present in the previous measure will automatically repeat itself during playback.

### 4.6.1 Repeated verses

Many scores have multiple verses that repeat several times even though the music is written once and may or may not even have barlines (e.g. hymnals). Other scores have sections marked only by single repeat barlines but are intended to repeat several times (e.g. the ending of a song with “repeat and fade”).

To change how many times a section should be repeated,

- a. With the **Properties** tool selected, click on the Left Repeat barline that begins the section. The Barline Properties window will open.

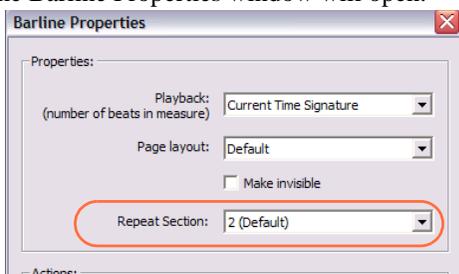


FIGURE 4 - 11: Selecting the number of verses to be repeated

- b. Select the number of desired repeats in the **Repeat Section** pull-down menu. Choices are from 1 to 8 repeats.

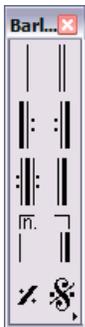
## 4.7 Numbered Endings

SmartScore can cope well with repeats, jumps and endings both simple and complex. For proper playback to occur, repeats and endings must be unambiguous and logical.

With SmartScore's **alt repeat** tool you are able to set the sequence of numbered endings as well as how many times they should repeat.

To create a numbered ending or edit an existing numbered barline,

- a. Select **Start Alt Rep** button from the “Barlines and Repeats” palette then click on the appropriate barline to assign its sequence properties.
- b. The **Repeats** window will open. Choose “1” to assign the next repeat sequence as the first ending.
- c. The **Close Ending** tool will appear on the cursor. Click on the last barline that terminates the first ending. The cursor then switches again to the **Start Ending** tool.



- d. Click on barline that begins the second ending (it may be the same barline that closes the first ending). Choose “2” as the sequence number of the second ending.

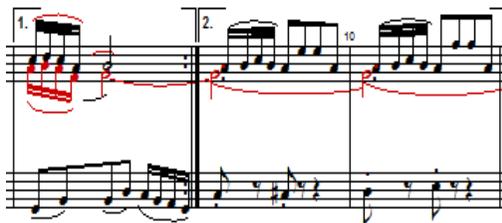


FIGURE 4 - 12: Multiple Endings

- e. Finally, click the barline that “closes out” the last ending.

Occasionally, you may wish to change an existing numbered barline to a “normal un-numbered” barline. This would apply to a barline that was mis-recognized as being numbered or to undo a one that had been previous edited as numbered.

*To change a numbered ending barline to a “normal” barline,*

- Ctrl + click** on a nearby barline (or pick it off the Barlines palette). Click directly to the left of the numbered ending. This inserts the selected barline.
- Delete the numbered ending (hit the “X” key and click to delete).

NOTE: **Repeat barlines** are critical for correct playback. Remember, the number given to each ending represents the order each ending will play within a repeated section. You can have multiple “1st & 2nd endings” provided each set of endings is placed inside **repeat barlines**. Without repeat bars, SmartScore will interpret it as “Repeat last section this number of times.”. Jumps are different... they are not sequential. For more information about non-sequential jumping, see "Repeated verses", Section 4.6.1, on page 49.

#### 4.7.1 Deleting numbered endings and barlines at the end of systems

Numbered endings and barlines at the end of systems have special properties. They cannot be changed to “normal” barlines using the usual “Ctrl-click” or “Insert/Change” function.

*To delete and replace a numbered ending or barline at the end of a system,*

- Insert the desired barline type to the left of the numbered ending that you wish to remove.
- Delete the original ending (hit “X” key and click). The measure will shift slightly to the left.

## 4.7.2 Change of key/time and the double barline

Usually, changes of time and key signatures at the end of a system are preceded by a double barline. If for any reason playback hesitates after a change of key or time signature, make sure the barline preceding the signature is actually a double barline. Two single barlines will cause playback to hesitate. Jumps

## 4.8 Jumps

Jump symbols may include *segno*, *da capo*, *coda*, *to coda*, *fine* and other markings indicating where playback should stop and jump back, jump forward or be repeated and finally stop. To avoid discontinuity or endless looping (what we call the “bowl of spaghetti” problem), it’s important that jumps be used logically.

### 4.8.1 Working with the Coda

A *Coda* sign generally marks the concluding passage of a piece. A *To Coda* sign is used to mark where a jump to the Coda begins; usually from inside a repeated passage.

*To insert a “jump to Coda” sign and mark the beginning of a Coda,*

- Select the *To Coda* sign from the palette. Find the measure where playback begins its “jump” (usually at the end of a repeated section or numbered ending). Click on the barline to insert the To Coda sign. It will appear above the bar.
- Select the *Coda* sign from the “Barlines and Repeats” palette. In Insert mode, click on the barline where the *coda* is to begin, (usually near the end of the piece).



NOTE: The *Coda* will not be played back until it is activated by the *To Coda* or *d.s. al Coda* sign.

### 4.8.2 Working with the Segno



**Segno** means “sign”. It marks the beginning of a final repeat or ending. Segnos are usually positioned early on in the piece.

*To mark a final repeat with a segno,*

- Select *Segno* from the “Barlines and Repeats” palette.
- Insert** the *Segno* by clicking the barline that begins the *last* repeated ending or section.
- To stop a *final* repeat or ending, return to the *Segno* and continue on to the *Coda*, select *d.s. al Coda* (meaning “from the sign to the Coda”).

*To have a final repeat or ending return to the beginning of the piece and terminate at the **Segno** sign,*

- Select **d.c. al Segno** (meaning “from the beginning up to the sign”) and insert it by clicking on the barline in the last ending or repeat where playback is to return. The repeated section will return to the beginning of the score and play through to the **Segno**.

NOTE: **To Coda, Segno, d.s. al Coda, D.S., D.C.** and **d.s. al Fine** signs are all ignored until an ending or repeat is played once.

#### 4.8.3 Working with the *da Capo* (D.C.), *dal Segno* (D.S.), and *Fine* signs

**D.C. (da capo)** means “from the beginning” or “return to the beginning”.

*To have playback return to the beginning of the piece and play through to the end,*

- Select the **D.C.** button from the “Barlines and Repeats” palette.

**D.S. (dal Segno)** means “from the sign” or “return to the sign”.

*To have a final repeat or ending return to the Segno and play through to the end,*

- a. Select the **D.S.** button from the “Barlines and Repeats” palette.
- b. Click on the desired barline to insert the **D.S.** sign.

**Fine** means ending. It is usually placed in the middle of a repeated ending and terminates the song.

*To have the last repeat stop, return to the **Segno** and continue on to the end of the piece,*

- a. Insert a **Fine** sign by clicking on the barline that marks the final end point.
- b. Select **d.s. al Fine** (meaning “from the sign to the end”) from the “Barlines and Repeats” palette.
- c. **Insert** either the **d.s. al Coda** or **d.s. al Fine** mark by clicking the barline where the *last* repeat is to begin.

*To have the final repeat or ending return to the beginning and play through to the **Fine**,*

- Place the **Fine** sign at the appropriate barline. Select and insert **d.c. al Fine** in a measure *following* the **Fine** sign.

Repeat signs, ending markings (including *Codas* and *Segnos*) are found in the “Barlines and Repeats” palette. Using repeat signs properly will alter playback accordingly.

## 4.9 Playback Properties

Playback values of dynamic and articulation markings can be altered by use of the “Properties” tool. Changes can be applied individually to the marking itself or globally to all similar markings in the score. Finally, default values can be reset for that particular mark for all future SmartScore files. Certain changes to barline properties will also affect playback. See 4.9.11 on page 59 and 4.6.1 on page 49 for barline properties details.

*To activate the Properties window of an object:*



- Hit the “Esc” key or select the **Properties** icon from the Toolbar and click on one of the objects below to open and modify its playback and display properties:

### 4.9.1 Note Properties

Clicking on any note head will open the Note Properties window.

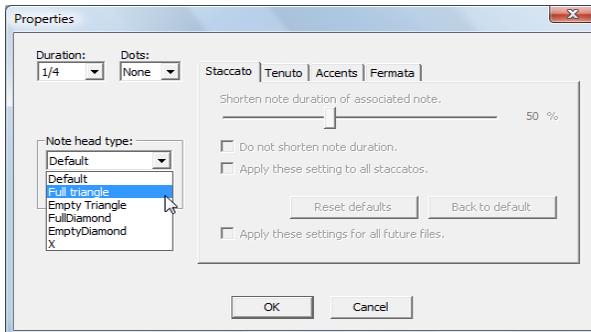


FIGURE 4 - 13: Note Properties

- Note duration: Change basic note value.
- Dots: Add or change dots of prolongation.
- Staccato: Change default duration when staccato is applied.
- Tenuto: Change default duration when tenuto is applied.
- Accents: Change default velocity when accent is applied.
- Fermata: Change default tempo when fermata is applied.
- Notehead types: Noteheads can be altered to several alternative shapes configurations including triangle, empty triangle, diamond, empty diamond and “x”.

## 4.9.2 Property Options (All Properties windows)

- **Apply (changed property) to All:**

Selecting this option will update playback properties of the same mark throughout the score.

- **Apply Setting(s) to All Future Files:**

Selecting this option will permanently reset the default value for the selected property to its new values for all future ENF files.

- **Back to Default:**

This will reset values to *application launch* defaults.

- **Reset Defaults;**

This will return values to *new installation* defaults.

## 4.9.3 Slur (Legato) Properties

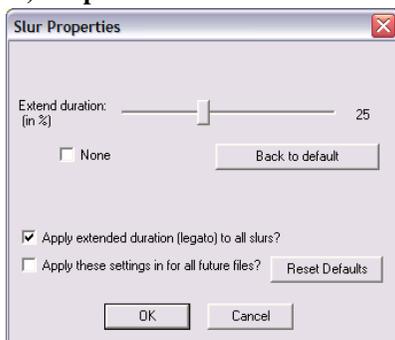


FIGURE 4 - 14: Dynamic Marking Properties

- **Extend duration:** Duration of notes associated with the slur.
- **None:** No increase of note duration.

## 4.9.4 Tempo Marking Properties

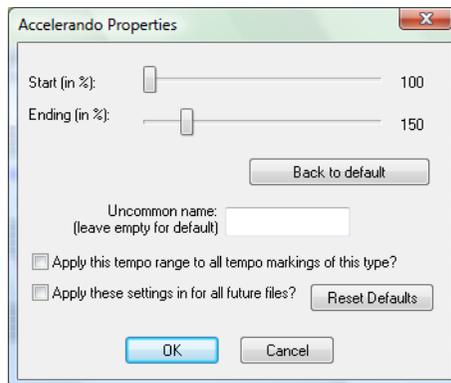
Tempo values can be changed by clicking any tempo marking with the Properties tool. Changes can be applied to all tempo marks in the document or to all future instances of the selected tempo mark.



FIGURE 4 - 15: Tempo Marking Properties

- **Tempo slider:** Reset tempo value.
- **Uncommon Name:** Enter an alternative name for the tempo marking (e.g. “really fast”).

## 4.9.5 Accelerando, Descelerando and Ritard Properties



- Starting and ending tempos (as a percent of default tempo)
- Use an uncommon name (e.g. “gradually slower”)

## 4.9.6 Hairpin, Cresc. and Decresc. Properties

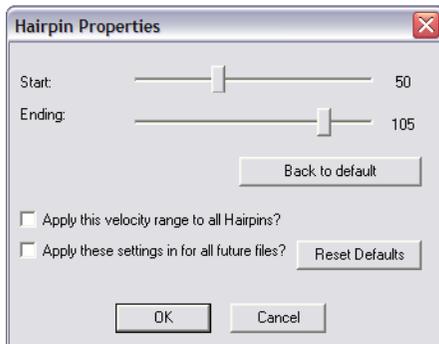


FIGURE 4 - 16: Hairpin Properties

- **Velocity sliders:** Start value and Ending velocity values.

## 4.9.7 Trill Properties

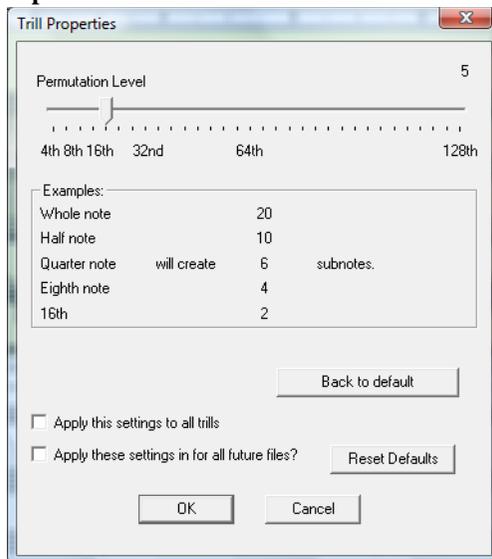


FIGURE 4 - 17: Trill Properties

- **Permutations:** The number of half-step movements.

## 4.9.8 Dynamic Marking Properties

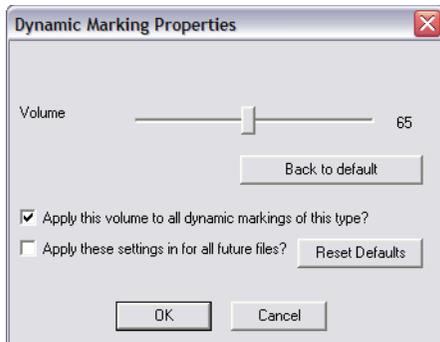


FIGURE 4 - 18: Dynamic Marking Properties

- **Volume slider:** Resets the volume for the current part.
- **Range:** 10 to 127 (General Volume)

## 4.9.9 Tuplet Properties

- **Divisions** = The number of beats to be applied to the tuplet. **Value** = The number of (equal) notes that would be in the group **if no** tuplet were applied. See 4.4.1 on page 44 for more details.
- **Hide** = Do not show (uncheck to show) **Value** number or **Symbol** bracket.
- **Apply to:** **Only this symbol** or **All symbols** in current file.

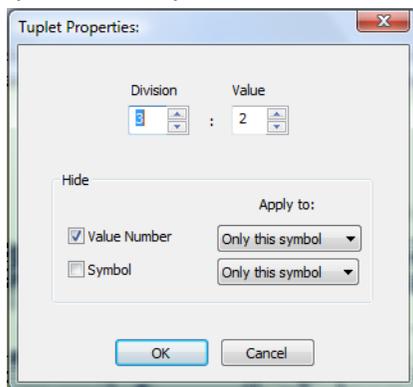


FIGURE 4 - 19: Tuplet Properties

NOTE: Default settings for how tuplets appear can be changed in **Text Symbols** and **Score symbols** tabs found in Program Preferences or Document Preferences.

#### 4.9.10 Multi-Measure Rest Properties

- **Measures** = Number of measures the multi-measure rest applies.



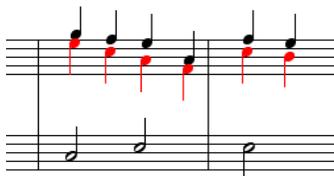
FIGURE 4 - 20: Multi-measure Rest Properties

#### 4.9.11 Barline Properties (Pickup measures and Codas)

Pickup, measures normally begin a piece or section with a truncated measure having less beats than the time signature calls for. It is often associated with a “closeout” measure at the end of the section. Split-measures are divided between the final measure of one system and continue through the first measure of the following system.



Pickup Measure (Typical)



Split Measure (Typical)

FIGURE 4 - 21: Pickup and split measures

Incomplete, pickup, closeout and split measures will normally cause playback to hesitate. By default, SmartScore applies the exact number of beats to each measure (Lock to Time Signature).

*To play individual measures exactly as written,*

- a. Select **Properties Tool** and click on the barline that precedes the measure in question.



- b. In the **Playback** combo box, choose “*As written*”.

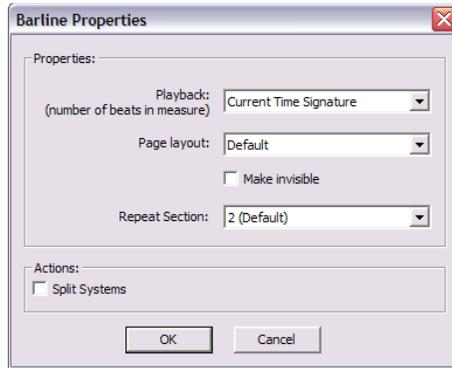


FIGURE 4 - 22: Barline Properties

Sometimes a score will contain so many split or incomplete measures that you will simply want to play it entirely without hesitation. In this case, you will want to apply “Play as written” to the **Playback** tab in **Document Preferences**.

*To play all measures in the document exactly as written,*

- Go to **Edit > Document Preferences**. In the **Time Signature** (*Lock to Time Signature*) pull-down menu, select “*Play as written*”. All measures are now unlocked.



FIGURE 4 - 23: Document Preferences > Playback > Play as Written

In **Barline Properties**, you can also create system breaks (Codas) and page breaks.

**NOTE:** If the original score contains a coda system break, it’s important to indicate that prior to recognition. SmartScore will recognize split systems if **Recognize tablature, percussion and split systems** is checked in the Begin Recognition dialog. For more information, see “Recognition Options”, Section 3.5.1, on page 25.

To create a Coda (Split system)

- Select **Properties Tool** and click on the barline that begins a measure of interest. Choose **Actions > “Split System”**.



FIGURE 4 - 24: Creating Codas (Split Systems)

## 4.10 Other Playback Options

### 4.10.1 Karaoke View

Feel like singing out loud? Hey, you only live once...

To view moving lyrics with familiar bouncing ball,

- Press the **Karaoke** button in the **Navigator** palette.
- The **Options** menu allow for changes in the Karaoke display. These options are also available in **Edit > Program Preferences**.
- Open the Playback Console (Ctrl + 9 / Cmnd + 9 for *Mac*) to adjust tempo and change instrument assignments for parts and voices.



### 4.10.2 Instrument Templates

Instrument Templates is the “source” from which instruments are created and linked to parts in the System Manager (See Section 7.4 on page 113.).

- a. To open Instrument Templates, select **Edit > Instrument Templates** or hit **Ctrl + F Win (Cmnd + F Mac)** or push “Open Instrument Templates” from inside System Manager.

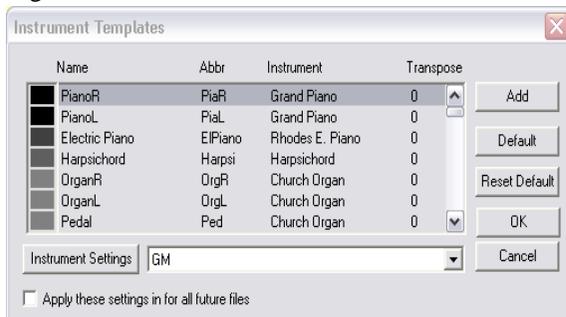


FIGURE 4 - 25: Instrument Templates

*To change or add a new instrument template,*

- a. Hit **(Ctrl+F/Cmnd+F)** or **Edit > Instrument Templates**. Click in the **Name** field of any template and type to change the given name of an instrument.
- b. To change an abbreviation, click then type inside the **Abbr** field.
- c. Click and select a different MIDI instrument from the **Instrument** list to change default MIDI instrument assignment.
- d. **Transpose** displays the default playback transposition for selected instruments. The MIDI representation *will* reflect the transposed shift in pitch.
- e. Various sets of MIDI instruments can be selected in **Instrument Settings** pull-down menu. Instrument sets acquire their names by clicking on the **Instrument Settings** button and selecting a set.
- f. To save settings for future ENF files, check “**Save for Future**”.

### 4.10.3 Transposed instruments

Transposed instruments do not actually play the pitches notated in the score. To play them back in tune with the other non-transposed instruments, they must have their playback adjusted up or down by certain intervals. This “playback transposition” is already preset in Instrument Templates for most transposed instruments. The number in this column represents the amount of pitch change (+/-) in half-step increments.

#### 4.10.4 Adding instruments

You can add new instruments with unique names and playback parameters as well as change existing names and parameters for any existing template. All templates are accessible in the Part Name column of the System Manager. For more information on the System Manager, turn to "System Manager", Section 7.4.

#### 4.10.5 Add drum tracks

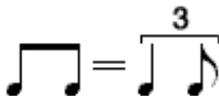
Adding an automatic drum track will add more pizzazz to the mix.



Push the **Drum Pattern** button in the Toolbar to select an appropriate pattern for your piece. For more information on adding or creating drum tracks, go to "Automatic Drum Patterns", Section 9.5.

#### 4.10.6 Swing

This feature applies standard swing rhythm to straight 8th and 16th notes notated in beamed groups. SmartScore will modify playback and the underlying MIDI representation as follows:



*To apply swing to playback,*

In the **Playback** menu, click on **Swing**.

### 4.11 ENF Graphical controllers

With the Velocity graphical controller you can vary note velocities of each note cluster quickly and smoothly. With the Tempo controller, you can "draw in" tempo variations smoothly over time. Controllers can be accessed either in the ENF *Toolbar* or below the Piano Roll window in MIDI view.



FIGURE 4 - 26: Text and Controllers

### 4.11.1 Velocity Controller



In ENF score view, push the “**Velocity controller**” button to activate. Click and drag your mouse along the vertical bars which represent each note’s velocity. The higher the bar, the more the velocity.

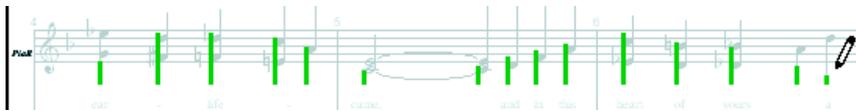


FIGURE 4 - 27: ENF Velocity Controller

### 4.11.2 Tempo Controller



Push the “**Tempo controller**” button to activate. The horizontal line in the *topmost staff* represents default tempo. To vary tempo, click and drag your mouse up or down. The last tempo point will be fixed until changed.



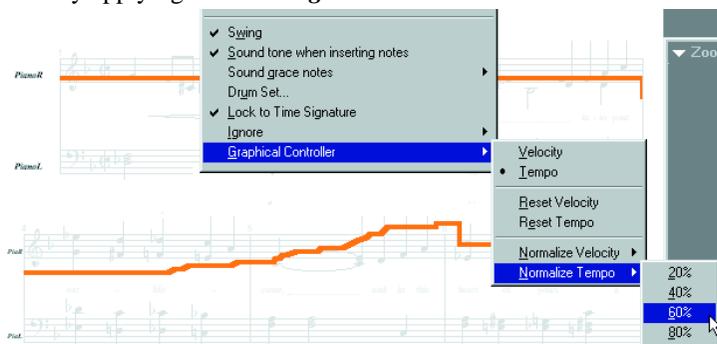
FIGURE 4 - 28: ENF Tempo Controller

**NOTE:** For **ritards**, **accelerandos** and **desclerandos**, use the Properties tool instead of the Tempo Controller. You will have much more predicable results. See 4.9.5 on page 56 for information on these properties.

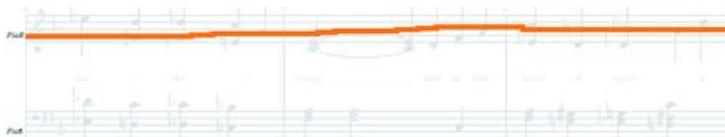


### 4.11.3 Normalize controllers

After making changes to Tempo or Velocity controllers, you may find you have created greater-than-desired changes to playback. If so, you may globally reduce the effects of either controller by applying *normalizing*.



Normalize Tempo Controller (Before)



Tempo Controller after normalizing by 80%

FIGURE 4 - 29: Normalizing Tempo

*To reduce effects of either Tempo or Velocity graphical controllers*

- Choose **Playback > Graphical Controller**
- Select either **Normalize Tempo** or **Normalize Velocity**.
- Choose amount of reduction desired: 20% / 40% / 60% or 80%. Controller display and playback will change accordingly.
- Choosing **Reset** removes all controller changes and resets the default settings. Tempo markings inserted into ENF will still take effect. The end result is an averaging of all tempo values.

## 4.12 Working with Finale<sup>®</sup> and other scorers or programs.



SmartScore full version works seamlessly with MakeMusic's<sup>®</sup> Finale<sup>®</sup> program. If you already own a version of Finale or Print Music with SmartScore Lite, SmartScore can be made to launch automatically when "Music Scanning" is launched in Finale...

*To launch Finale and import the current SmartScore file,*



Push the "Save as XML and open in Finale" button in the lower Toolbar. The current ENF file will be saved as an XML file. Finale is then launched (provided it is installed) and the SmartScore file will import as a MusicXML file.

### 4.12.1 Converting SmartScore files to other file types

*To save SmartScore files in one of several different file formats...*

In the **File > Save As (File type/Format)** pull-down menu, choose one of the following formats to save the ENF score to:

- **MusicXML (.XML)** MusicXML has quickly become the most widely used file format for the exchange of music notation files between scorers. Most well-known notation scoring programs now support importing and exporting MusicXML files including Sibelius<sup>®</sup>, Finale<sup>®</sup>, Notion<sup>®</sup>, Personal Composer<sup>®</sup> and others.
- **MIDI files (.MID)** will import playback data into most other music software programs with no page formatting. All graphical information about note position, stem direction, voices, etc. are lost. MIDI is to music what ASCII is to text.



## 4.13 Maintaining playback continuity

Playback may lose continuity for several reasons, e.g. system braces/brackets were cut off during scanning or in the case of optimized scores, where the number of parts varies between systems.

### 4.13.1 Merging Systems

For parts to play simultaneously, they must be joined by a bracket along the left-hand margin. If during scanning, brackets of the original score are cut off by mistake or if something "breaks" the solid line of a bracket, one or more parts become separated and will appear in ENF as single-line systems. If so, all parts will not play back simultaneously. SmartScore has a tool to rejoin broken systems; forming a larger, corrected system.

To merge two systems into one larger system,

- a. Position your cursor over the topmost broken system or staff line. Hit **Ctrl+L** / **Cmd+L (Mac)**. The **Re-link Parts** window will open up.

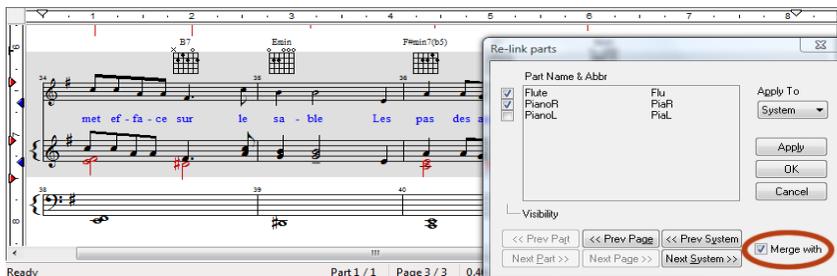


FIGURE 4 - 30: Re-link Parts / Merging Systems

- b. The active system highlights in grey. Using the checkboxes, reassign each highlighted staff to its correct part name and position in what will become the final, reformed system. **Apply to = System**.
- c. Press the **Next System** button and reassign each highlighted staff line to its correct part name as you did above. Return to the first staff of the final, reformed system by selecting **Previous System**.
- d. Now, check the **Merge with** checkbox. When the **Next System** button is pushed, the two systems will join into a single system. Continue using **Next System** again until all separated parts are correctly joined. Review Part Name checkboxes for correctness.

#### 4.13.2 Restoring a missed or “invisible” staff line

Occasionally, a staff line inside a system may have been missed during recognition due to flaws in the original score. Or in the case of an optimized score, you may want to restore a “hidden” (optimized) staff.

- a. First, you want to check that parts in the shorted system are properly linked. Position the cursor inside the system and hit **Ctrl + L** to open **Re-link Parts**.
- b. Put a check next to the appropriate *visible* parts. Leave the missing part unchecked. Make sure the order of the parts you check correspond to the actual staffline and the missing part remains unchecked. Hit **OK**.
- c. Select the **Properties** tool (**Esc** key).



NOTE: Yellow arrows along each system bracket indicate all possible parts, visible or invisible. They correspond to the “Super System” in **System Manager**.

The image shows a musical score for Piano and Tenor. The Piano part is in the lower system, and the Tenor part is in the upper system. A yellow arrow points to a missing staff line in the Piano part, labeled "Missed or 'invisible' staff line". The score includes lyrics: "think I can lick Ev - ry oth - er fel - ler's fa - ther; Well, :".



- d. With your cursor in the affected system, click on a “floating” yellow arrow that corresponds to the missing staff line you wish to restore.
- e. In the “Staff Properties” window check “Visibility”. Make sure “Show Staff” is also selected.
- f. In the “Apply To:” pull-down menu, select “**Current Staffline or System**”.

**TIP:** Hit the “U” key and select **Unify Key Signatures (based on First System)**. Hit **OK** and the key signatures of the score will become unified. Now you need only to fill in the missing notes. Remember you can always use **Copy** and **Paste** to clone measures of notes at a time whenever possible.

## 4.14 Re-linking parts

Occasionally, scores will contain collapsed or expanded systems (sometimes referred to as “optimized systems”). Unless you re-link parts, these systems will not playback with the correct instrumentation.

The **Re-link Parts** function allows you to reassign each visible staff with its correct part (as defined by **Part Name** in System Manager). By re-linking parts of optimized scores, parts will play back correctly as they disappear and reappear throughout the score.

NOTE: Parts listed in **Re-link Parts** window are derived from the Part Name column of the System Manager (see “System Manager”, Section 7.4, on page 113 for more information). Checked boxes identify which parts are assigned to the active system. Before re-linking, make sure all possible parts have been created.

To re-link parts in a system,

- From the FILE menu, select “Part Linking”. Or, hit **Ctrl+L** (Win) / **Cmd+L** (Mac). This will open the **Re-link Parts** window:.

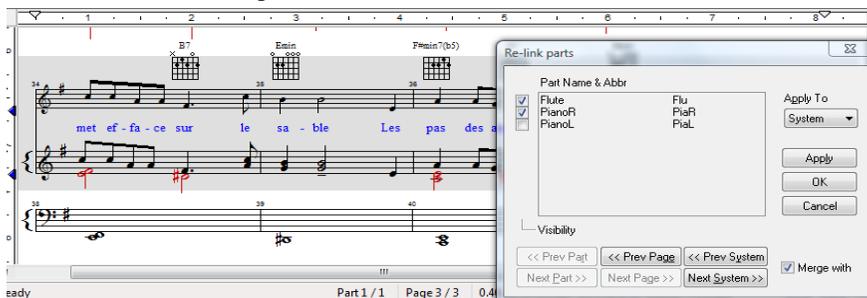


FIGURE 4 - 31: Re-link Parts window

- Check the part names that are associated with each staff in the active system. Be sure to remove checks from parts that are not associated with the active system. Larger systems may require scrolling down the list. The program will not allow you to select more or less parts than actually appear in the active system.
- To view adjacent systems, press *Next* or *Prev System*.
- In the **Apply To** box, press **Apply** to apply to active system. **System+** will apply to the active system plus all subsequent systems.

This image shows the first page of an orchestral score. It consists of three systems of music, each containing 15 staves. The notation is dense, with various musical symbols, clefs, and dynamics. The page is labeled 'Page #1 of Orchestral Score' at the bottom.

Page #1 of Orchestral Score

This image shows the second page of the orchestral score. It contains three systems of music, each with 6 staves. The notation continues from the first page. The page is labeled 'Page #2 of Orchestral Score' at the bottom.

Page #2 of Orchestral Score

In this example, the first page consists of one system having 15 parts (15 staves per system). With the cursor positioned over the system and Re-link Parts opened, 15 parts will be checked.

The second page contains 3 systems each with 6 staves. Many parts that appeared on the first page have dropped out. With the cursor positioned over one of the systems, 15 Part Names will be listed but only 6 will be checked in the Re-link Parts window. In this case, it was necessary to remove all check marks and then check the top six parts to reestablish proper part linking.

See FIGURE 4 - 31:. Notice that the re-linked parts were applied to all subsequent systems (System+) from the top-most active system.

FIGURE 4 - 32:  
Re-linking an orchestral score

## 4.15 3rd-party VST (Windows) and AU (Mac) audio setup

SmartScore hosts third-party sound libraries compiled for VST (for Windows) and Audio Units (for Macintosh). Some sound libraries may not be supported.

- a. Go to the **Playback** menu again and select **VST or AU Setup**. Push **Add** and browse to the plug in folder created when your sound library was installed. If the plug-in folder cannot be located, reinstall the library and be sure to install the audio plug-in.

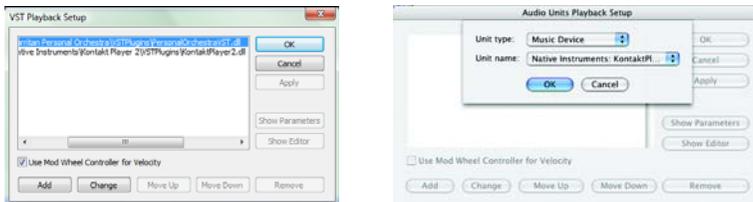


FIGURE 4 - 33: VST (Win) and AU (Mac) Setup

- b. Go to **Playback** menu and select **MIDI Devices**. Click on “VST Plugins” (Win) or “Audio Units” (Mac) from inside the Output window. Click **OK**.

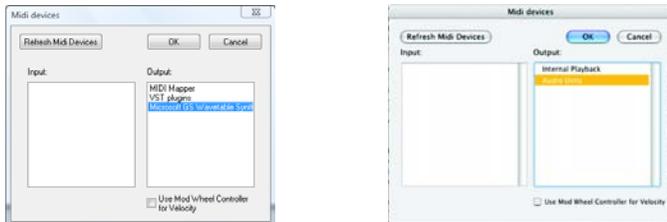


FIGURE 4 - 34: Playback > MIDI Devices

- c. To return to your computer’s wavetable sound set, open **Playback > MIDI Devices** and reselect the desired driver.

Once the desired plug-in is selected, push **OK**. In the main ENF view, push the **VST** (or **AU**) button in the Toolbar to open the plug-in player.



## 4.15.1 MIDI Setup

It may be necessary to identify the MIDI device attached to your system in order for SmartScore to play General MIDI instruments. In the Playback menus, select MIDI Devices and choose **General MIDI** or **MIDI Mapper**. Most computers today provide built-in *MIDI synthesis*. This allows you to select and play General MIDI (GM) sounds without installing an outboard synthesizer or soundcard.

*To set the MIDI input and output devices,*

- a. Select **MIDI Devices** from the **Playback** menu. The MIDI Devices window will open.

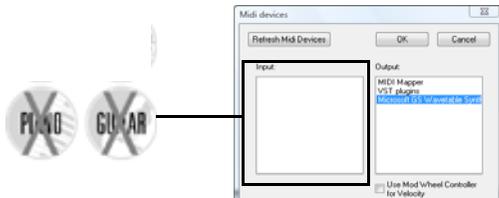


FIGURE 4 - 35: Playback > MIDI Devices

- b. Click on the **MIDI Output** device you wish to use for MIDI playback. The MIDI device window will display all installed MIDI device drivers.
- c. If you intend to record in SmartScore, select the desired MIDI recording device/interface in **Input** window.

**NOTE:** If the desired device is not listed in the MIDI Devices window make sure your MIDI device driver has been properly installed.

- d. Press **OK** to set the selected MIDI devices as your MIDI sources.

**NOTE:** You may need to close any open MIDI programs. Some MIDI programs prevent playback by blocking the MIDI Out port.

#### 4.15.2 Audio MIDI Setup (Macintosh)

To access Audio MIDI Setup in Mac OS X, locate “Utilities” folder inside the “Applications” folder. Double-click on Audio MIDI Setup.

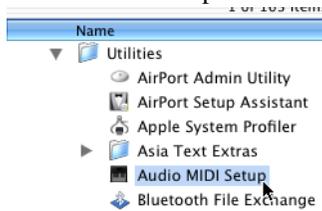


FIGURE 4 - 36: Applications > Utilities > Audio MIDI Setup (Mac)

If you have external MIDI devices installed such as an external synthesizer module and MIDI interface, they should appear as icons in the window. Using your mouse, drag the “Out” arrow of the source device to the “In” arrow of the receiving device and vice-versa. Internal connections should then be established. Close Audio MIDI Setup.f

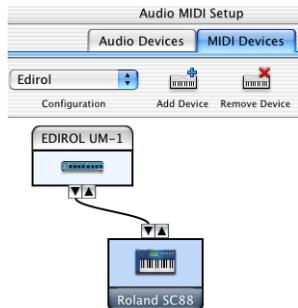


FIGURE 4 - 37: Connecting MIDI Devices in Audio MIDI Setup

With SmartScore ENF file open on your Mac, go to Playback menu, click and select Playback at the bottom of the list. Choose CoreMIDI Playback to activate devices connected in Audio MIDI Setup. To activate built-in *soft-synthesizer* (Macintosh QuickTime Musical Instruments), choose QT Internal Playback.

---

## 5)

# Basic Score Editing

---

This section describes basic SmartScore editing features. For information on advanced editing techniques such as part extraction, optimizing scores, managing systems, applying or changing instrument templates, reformatting, respacing, page reformatting, print setup and part linking, turn to Chapter "Detailed ENF Editing", Section 7), on page 104. Many editing and playback default settings are accessible in either *Document Preferences* or *Program Preferences* under the **Edit** menu. See "Preferences", Section 11.1, on page 214 for details.

## 5.1 Navigating Inside an ENF Document

### 5.1.1 Active staffline

Only one staff can be edited at a time. Positioning your mouse over a staff will cause it to highlight black. Objects associated with the highlighted staff (including text and lyrics) can then be edited. You can choose to display just the active staff or to all staves in black.

*To display all staff lines in solid black,*

- Go to the **View** menu and uncheck **Show Active Staff**.

*To lock the active staff and allow the mouse to move anywhere,*

- Hit the **Caps Lock** key. To unlock the active staff, press again.

### 5.1.2 Page View Display

Several ENF page view layouts are available after scanning.

*To select a different page view layout,*

- Click on any one of four page view buttons in lower Status Bar.



FIGURE 5 - 1: Page View Buttons

- View ENF pages horizontally
- View pages vertically
- View pages in book format (facing pages)
- View score in horizontal scroll format (long view)

NOTE: Whenever the ENF and TIFF view panes lose synchronization, e.g. in **Long View** mode or after score reformatting, the Image display pane will close and the “Scan View” window will appear instead. Closing the Scan View window will re-initialize normal Image / ENF view panes.

### 5.1.3 Scan View Window

The TIF/ENF split screen format can be changed to display only the ENF view with a floating “scan view window” corresponding to the same region in the scanned image where your cursor is placed.

To view full-screen ENF pane with a floating scan window:

- Go to the **Window** menu and select **Scan View window**.

By dragging the **Split Pane** control up or down, you can quickly view more of the TIF pane or more of the ENF pane.

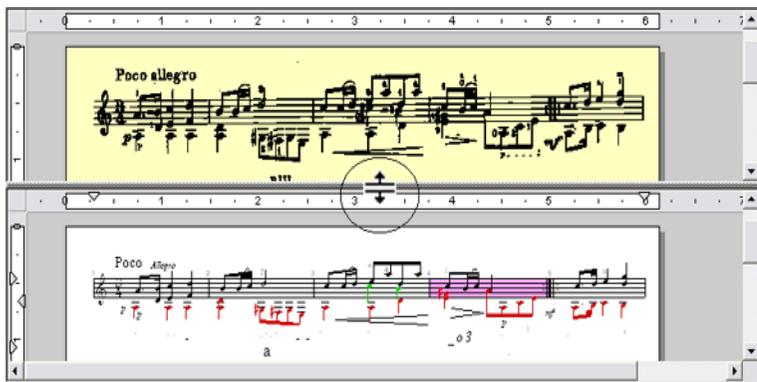


FIGURE 5 - 2: Window pane shade control bar (View > Split Screen > Vertical)

The slider to the right of the Toolbar controls both the TIFF / ENF window shade bar.

#### 5.1.3a TIFF / ENF Overlay view (Mac Only)

An opaque ENF-over-TIFF view is available on Macs. The ENF-TIF slider adjusts the opacity of the ENF overlay from 0 to 100%.

To edit using ENF variable-opacity overlay,

Go to **View > Split Screen > Overlay**.

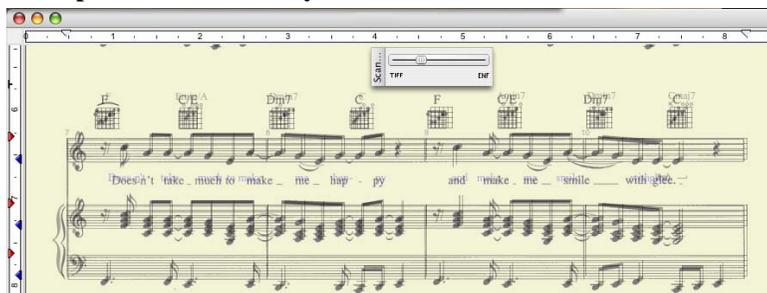


FIGURE 5 - 3: ENF / TIFF overlay view (Mac only)

To change zoom level in any view window,

- Select one of 3 zoom levels in **View > Scan View window**.

### 5.1.4 Zoom

To Zoom in and out,



- Click the Zoom icon in the Toolbar or press **Ctrl + Q**.
- Left click will increase the scale of your view (Zoom In), while right-click (**Option + click** for Mac) will decrease the scale of your view (Zoom Out). **Ctrl + scroll wheel** works for zooming in and out as well.

For additional information on navigating inside an ENF document, see "Split-screen and scan view reference views", Section 7.11.1, on page 153.

### 5.1.5 Paging

To page forward or backward in an ENF document,



- The Next / Previous page control buttons are located to the far right of the ENF Toolbar.

To add a new page with empty systems,



- Push the **Add New Page** button in the Status Bar.

### 5.1.6 Status Bar options

The status bar at the bottom of the SmartScore window contains information about the current page being viewed. Clicking inside any of these fields will open a control window: Page Number (**Go To**), Page Size (**Page Setup**) or Zoom Level (**Zoom**).

## 5.2 Editing the Music

For editing, we recommend a “left-hand-on-keyboard” technique as shown below. The left index finger is over the “C” key, the left middle finger is over the “X” key, the left ring finger is over the “Z” key and the small finger is over the “CTRL” key.

NOTE: You will find editing fast and easy once you begin working with this “Quick Keys” method:



FIGURE 5 - 4: Left-Hand Position for ENF Editing

### 5.2.1 Pitch shift (Nudge mode)

*To change the pitch of any note,*

Position the mouse over a staff line. Hold the **Shift** key down with your small left finger then click and hold on the control point in the center of the notehead. Drag the note head up or down to shift its vertical position in the staff.

*To change the pitch of several notes at once,*



- Press “**O**” key to activate the **Select** tool in Toolbar.
- Click and drag a box around any series of notes.
- Hold down the “**Shift**” key and drag the notes up or down.

### 5.2.2 Rhythmic errors

Measures highlighted in a reddish color indicate that one or more rhythmic errors were found inside a voiceline.



FIGURE 5 - 5: Measure with rhythmic error (1 beat is missing)

For neatness sake, many scores intentionally truncate second and third voicelines. Normally, truncated voices will not cause playback problems provided notes on the same beat are vertically aligned.

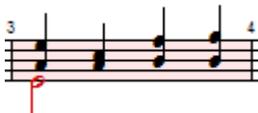


FIGURE 5 - 6: Voice #2 (stem down) is truncated causing measure to highlight

Pickup measures and measures split between systems play back without pauses by selecting Properties Tool (Esc key), clicking the beginning barline of the pickup, closeout or split measure and choosing “Play as written”.

NOTE: The red color used to highlight flag error measures can be turned off by unchecking “Show Error Measures” under the View menu.

### 5.2.3 Inserting Notation Symbols

Musical symbols can be selected from one of several floating tool palettes positioned on the left side of the screen. Symbols with multiple values are grouped inside a single “master” button identified with a small arrow. By **holding down** any button containing an arrow, the entire set of selectable symbols will expand to the right.



FIGURE 5 - 7: Expandable Palette Buttons (Notes and Rests)

### 5.2.4 Quick-select (Ctrl + Click):

You can select any symbol on a page without having to find it in a palette. Hold the **Ctrl** key down and click on any object. The cursor will inherit that object’s properties.

## 5.2.5 Insert mode



**Insert** mode (**Insert** button on the Toolbar.) is activated by hitting the “C” key on your computer keyboard. It also activates with *Quick-select* (Ctrl+click on an existing symbol) or when a symbol is picked from the Tool Palette. The selected symbol will insert into a staff line or will change an existing symbol when its clicked on.

*To change the value an existing note, rest or other symbol:*

- Select a note or rest within the same symbol class but with a different value.
- Position your cursor over the symbol to be changed until it highlights **yellow**. Then click to change the new symbol.

**NOTE:** When a note highlights light blue, clicking will insert a new note in another *voice* at the same *vertical event*. See "Working with Contrapuntal Voices", Section 7.9, on page 148 for more about vertical events.

## 5.2.6 Stem direction

In **Insert** mode, the default stem direction of a note switches when the cursor crosses the middle line of a staff.

To insert a note with the opposite stem direction as shown by your cursor, with a right-click (**option** + **click** for Mac).

*To reverse the stem direction of one or more selected notes,*

- Select one or more notes with the **Select Tool** (“O” key). Hit the “S” key to change stem direction of the selected notes.

*To change the stem direction of an existing note,*

- In **Insert** mode, right-click (**option** + **click** for Mac) on any note once it highlights yellow.

## 5.2.7 Deleting objects

There 4 methods for deleting objects. They are:



- “**Click Delete**”: Hit the “X” key (or push the “Delete” button in the Toolbar). Click on any symbol to delete it.



- “**Group Delete**”: Use the **Select** tool (“O” key) and drag the selector box over one or more objects highlighting them in yellow. Selected objects will appear grey-green. Hit the “Delete” key to delete all selected objects.



- **“Control Delete”:** *Quick-select* (Ctrl+click) any symbol. Hit the “X” key. Click on any object of the same class to delete it. NOTE: In this mode, note clusters will be deleted.



- **“Clustered Note Delete”:** Hit the “X” key (or push the “Delete” button in the Toolbar). Now hit the “Z” (cluster) key. In this mode, single noteheads of clusters will delete.

## 5.2.8 Undo / Redo

*To undo any single action,*

- Click the **Undo** or **Redo** button to reverse the last editing action. Or hold the **Ctrl** down and hit the “Z” key (**Cmd + Z** for Mac).

*To Undo or Redo one or more previous actions*

- To select one or more actions to be reversed, click the small arrow to the right of the Undo or Redo buttons. Drag to select multiple actions. Push “Undo Actions” or “Redo Actions”.

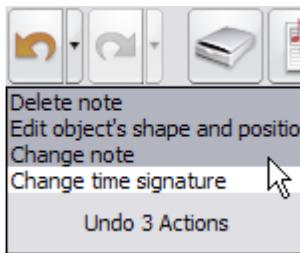


FIGURE 5 - 8: Undo multiple actions

## 5.2.9 Editing note clusters

*To insert additional note heads to existing note stem:*



In **Insert** mode, additional noteheads can be added to an existing note *provided* the selected note value (displayed by the cursor) is the same as the existing note stem. Position the cursor on the correct line or space and when the note highlights yellow, click to insert.



- To add a notehead to any existing note stem (regardless of what is shown on your cursor), hit the “Z” key (“Cluster tool”). When the existing note highlights yellow, click to insert new notehead.

To delete a notehead from existing cluster:

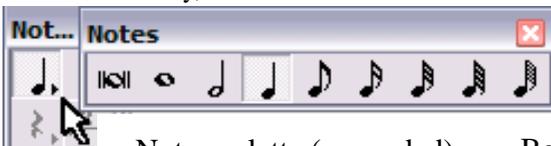
- Select Cluster tool from the Notes palette (“Z” key). Then hit the “X” key Clicking on any notehead in a cluster will remove a single notehead. The Delete cluster tool also works to delete single-headed notes.

NOTE: Always use the Cluster tool to remove single note heads. The single greyed note and arrow will delete entire note cluster.

### 5.2.10 Inserting, changing and deleting beamed notes

To edit beamed notes:

Hit the “C” key (or click on the **Insert** button for **Insert** mode) and select a flagged note from the “Notes” palette. Then choose a beam direction from the “Beams” palette or the “A” key on your computer keyboard. If a similar beam note is nearby, **Ctrl** + click on it to select it.



Notes palette (expanded)



Beams palette (expanded)

FIGURE 5 - 9: Editing Beamed Notes

- To form a beamed group, insert the selected beamed note by clicking into a staff (not adjacent to another beam group). Repeated clicks will form successive 2-note beam groups when “left” or “right” beam direction is selected. One continuous beam group will be created when the “middle-beam” is selected. **Auto-Beam** can be used, but it may also cause re-coupling of other beams in the measure. See "Score Properties", Section 7.3, on page 109 for more details.
- Inserting a “right” or “middle” beam to the left of an existing beam group will cause that note to attach itself to the beam on its right. Likewise “left” and “middle” beams will attach to the right of an existing beam. Clicking inside an existing beam group with the “middle” beam selected will insert a beam note inside the beamed group.
- Clicking on an yellow-highlighted beamed note will change its note value and/or beam direction as indicated by the cursor.
- To delete a beamed note, **Quick-Select** it, hit the “X” key and clicking again to remove it. Deleting an end beam will cause the beam to join to any adjacent beamed groups.

## 5.2.11 Forming beam groups (Select + “B”)

*To create a single beam group from adjacent flagged or beamed notes:*

- Use the Select tool (“O” key) and highlight any number of adjacent flagged notes. Hit the “B” key to join the notes into a single beamed group. The “B” key will also join two or more adjacent beam groups that are selected.

## 5.2.12 Barlines

- a. While in the **Insert** mode, hit the “I” key (or select any barline from the “Barlines & Repeats” palette).
- b. Click anywhere in the active staffline to **Insert** a barline.

### 5.2.12a Deleting / changing barlines at the end of systems.

Deleting a barline at the end or beginning of a system will cause that measure to roll up or down to an adjacent system. Follow this step to delete or change a barline type that ends or begins a system...

*To change a barline at the end of a system to another barline type,*

- a. Insert the desired barline type to the left of the barline that you wish to remove.

Delete the barline (“X” key then click). The measure will shift slightly to the left but not roll to an adjacent system.

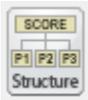
## 5.3 ENF Symbol Properties



The Properties tool is found in the Toolbar. Certain playback and display properties of most symbols can be edited by clicking with the Properties tool. Changes can be applied to all similar symbols in the score as well as all identical symbols created in future files.

### 5.3.1 Score Properties

Options for changing the structure and formatting of your score such as staff spacing and adding and deleting parts can be found in the “Score Properties” window. Select Score Properties from the FILE menu. Or, with the Properties tool selected, Score Properties is opened by right-clicking anywhere inside a staff line. For detailed description of the Score Properties window, see “Score Properties”, Section 7.3, on page 109.



The “Score Structure” environment lets you view and edit all open ENF documents in a graphical, hierarchical display. For details, see “Structure and hierarchy”, Section 6.5.1, on page 100



Adding and removing parts and voices can also be controlled from inside the “System Manager”. For more details, see "System Manager", Section 7.4, on page 113.

### 5.3.2 Barline Properties

With the **Properties** tool selected, click on the barline preceding the measure of interest. For details on controls, see "Barline Properties (Pickup measures and Codas)", Section 4.9.11, on page 59.

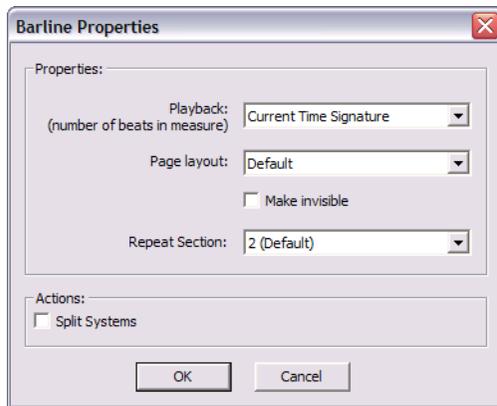


FIGURE 5 - 10: Barline Properties

### 5.3.3 Note Properties

With **Properties** tool selected, click on any note head. Here you can change note values, dots and even the appearance of the notehead.

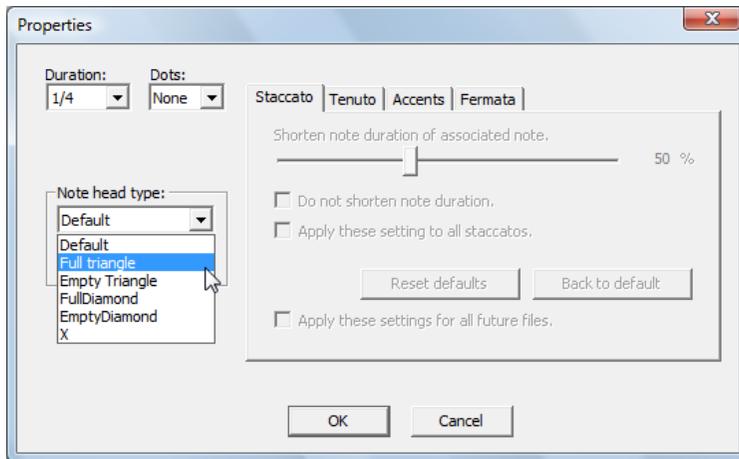


FIGURE 5 - 11: Note Properties

Refer to "Playback Properties", Section 4.9 for details on Note Properties and other playback properties including:

- **Articulations & Dynamics** (trill, arpeggio, dynamic marks, etc.)
- **Slur** (to shorten or extend legatos)
- **Tempo marking** (to change default tempo speeds)

## 5.4 Transposition by Key and Clef

Transposing all or part of a score can be accomplished in one of several ways. The most common is “transpose globally by key”, e.g. change an entire song from the key of E-Flat to the key of C.

Other transposition methods such as transpose-by-clef, transpose within a selected range and transpose-notes-only are all possible. To transpose the key of a score, first check that the “source” key signature is correct before applying any transposition function...

- a. Push the **Transpose** button or hit **Ctrl + T Win (Cmnd+T Mac)**.

- b. The “source” key signature will appear in the main window with its signature name listed in both major and relative minor keys.

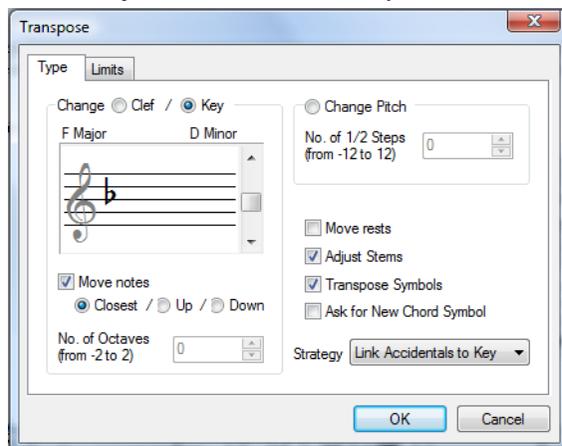


FIGURE 5 - 12: Key Transposition

- c. Choose to transpose either by **Key** or by **Clef** or by **Pitch**.
- d. Use the scroller to select a new key signature if by *Key* or a new clef sign if by *Clef*.
- e. With **Closest** selected, SmartScore will transpose to the target key, up or down, with the least number of intervals. Choose **Up** or **Down** if you wish to make your own choice. Push **OK**.

For information on additional transposition methods turn to "Transposition", Section 7.2, on page 106.

## 5.5 Printing and exporting your final score



If your score was scanned, ENF pages will probably not be centered. **Page Setup** provides various tools for controlling print layout. The simplest way to center music on each page is to select the **Fit to Page** layout option.

*To center ENF frames prior to printing...*



- Open **Page Setup**. In the Document Page Setup pull-down menu, choose **Center on Page**. Click **Apply**.

NOTE: Various document layouts can be applied in **Page Setup**. For example, you may want to have alternating left/right margins for bound

scores. To explore other printing layout options, see "Changing default margins", Section 6.3.2, on page 95.

*To print your score,*

- Select **File > Print** or push the **Print** button in the Toolbar.

*To save your ENF score as a PDF file,*

- Select **File > Save As PDF**.

**Windows Users:** CutePDF is the default PDF creator application, but several other alternatives may be installed and used.

*To select an alternative PDF creator application for Windows,*

- a. Open **Edit > Program Preferences** and click on **ENF-PDF**.
- b. Install an alternative PDF creation program and select it in the pull-down menu in the upper part of the window.

### 5.5.1 Optimizing oversized and undersized scanned scores

Modern “intelligent” scanners can (and will) do some unexpected things... in order to attain required resolutions (dpi), some scanners will actually re-scale the size of the image. An 8.5” x 11” page may end up becoming 9” x 13”. Since SmartScore matches the size of music scanned exactly, the resulting ENF file may print off the page. If this is the case, you can “optimize” the size of the SmartScore frame to fit precisely inside the margins of your default page size and orientation.

*To re-scale (optimize) your ENF pages,*

- a. Center the score on the page. (See "Page Centering", Section 6.3.1, on page 94)
- b. Go to **File>Format Score**. Check **Scale score**. Push **Find Optimal**. **OK**.

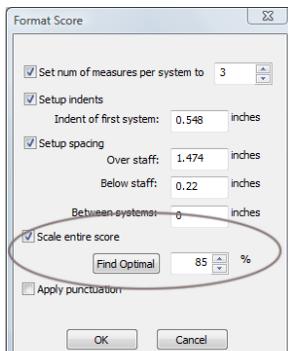


FIGURE 5 - 13: Format Score window



**TIP:** The **Reset Workspace** button (or **F1** key) will reset all windows and palettes to their default “startup” positions. It’s useful if your workspace gets messy.

## 5.6 Saving and Exporting ENF Files



You can save the current ENF file at any time by pushing the **Save** button in the Toolbar or by hitting **Ctrl + S** (**Cmd + S** for *Mac*).

## 5.7 Working with Finale<sup>®</sup> and other scorers or programs.



SmartScore full version works seamlessly with MakeMusic’s<sup>®</sup> Finale<sup>®</sup> program. If you already own a version of Finale or Print Music with SmartScore Lite, SmartScore can be made to launch automatically when “Music Scanning” is launched in Finale...

*To replace SmartScore Lite with SmartScore full in Finale:*

- In SmartScore, open **Edit > Program Preferences**. In the **User Interface** tab, place a check in the “Integrate with Finale” option. Push **OK** to apply.

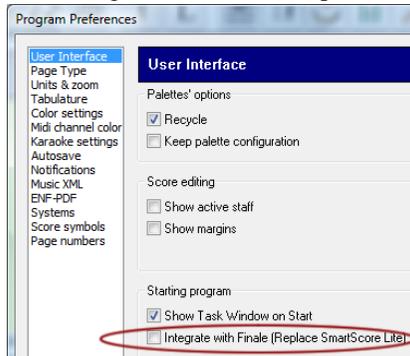


FIGURE 5 - 14: Program Preferences > User Interface

Always edit your music in SmartScore before bringing it into Finale. You will lose a lot less in the translation. You may find it more convenient to work entirely in SmartScore (e.g. transposition, playback and printing) or you may decide at some point to bring the SmartScore file into Finale.

To launch Finale and import the current SmartScore file,



Push the “Save as XML and open in Finale” button in the lower Toolbar. The current ENF file will be saved as an XML file. Finale is then launched (provided it is installed) and the SmartScore file will import as a MusicXML file.

### 5.7.1 Converting SmartScore files to other file types

To save SmartScore files in one of several different file formats.

a. In the **File > Save As (File type/Format)** pull-down menu, choose one of the following formats to save the ENF score to:

- **MusicXML (.XML)** MusicXML has quickly become the most widely used file format for the exchange of music notation files between scorewriters. Most well-known notation scorewriting programs now support importing and exporting MusicXML files including Sibelius®, Finale®, Notion®, Personal Composer® and others.



- **MIDI files (.MID)** will import playback data into most other music software programs with no page formatting. All graphical information about note position, stem direction, voices, etc. are lost. MIDI is to music what ASCII is to text. See "Saving MIDI Files", Section 10.13, on page 211.

b. Press **Save**. The proper extension will automatically be added.

The music notation equivalent to text is: MusicXML is like “rich text format” and MIDI is to music like “raw” ASCII text.

### 5.7.2 Copying a SmartScore page for pasting into other programs

To copy and paste a region or page into another application (e.g. Microsoft™ Word®, Adobe™ Photoshop®, e-mail programs, etc.),

To copy a full page:

- a. **Ctrl + A / Cmnd + C** (Select All) then **Ctrl + C / Cmnd + C** (Copy).
- b. Open 3rd-party application, position cursor and **Ctrl + V/Cmnd+ V** (Paste).

To copy a region of a page

- a. Press the “**O**” key to activate the **Select** tool.
- b. Right click (**option + click** for *Mac*) and drag to select a region in an ENF page that you wish to copy to the clipboard.
- c. Select **Edit > Copy (Ctrl + C / Cmnd+C)** to copy selected (highlighted) region to the clipboard as a **bitmap image**.
- d. Open application that supports bitmap graphics and select **Paste**.



*TIP:* Use this feature to take “snapshots” of musical snippets and Paste into word processors or other non-music programs.

## 5.8 Creating a New ENF Score from Scratch

SmartScore isn't only about scanning. It is also a full-featured scorewriter as well. When creating a new score from scratch, certain defaults will turn on such as auto-beaming and auto-spacing.

### 5.8.1 New score

*To create an empty ENF score using one of several basic templates,*



- a. Push the **Score** button on the Navigator or select **New > New ENF** under the **File** menu (**Ctrl + N** (Win) / **Cmd + N** (Mac)).

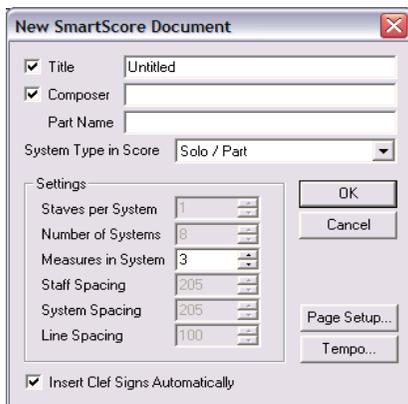


FIGURE 5 - 15: New score window

- b. Type in a **Title** for the new score.
  - c. Add the **Composer**'s name for the first page score header.
  - d. Press the **Page Setup** button to change the basic page layout of your score. See "Custom document layouts", Section 6.3.5, on page 96 for details.
- **Page Setup** opens document size and layout window.
  - **Tempo** will insert a metronome mark for playback.
  - Uncheck **Insert Clef Signs** automatically to create an ENF document without clefs.

## 5.8.2 Using Built-in Templates

SmartScore has 15 preset 2-page templates including solo instrument, piano, duet, common vocal and orchestral scores and a custom setup.

- a. Select a desired template from **System Type in Score** window.
- b. Once the score is open, you can edit normally.

*To add a new page,*



- a. Push the “Add New Page” button on the right of the status bar.
- b. Or, push the Properties Tool, right-click into any staff line and select “Add Empty Page” from the **Score Properties** window.



*To delete an empty page,*

- To delete a page, all systems on the page must first be removed. Right-click (**alt** for Mac) into each system of the page you wish to delete. Select “System > Remove” in the **Score Properties** window. Repeat as necessary.

## 5.8.3 Real Time Recording



An alternative to entering notes in by hand is to record MIDI-based performances using a MIDI keyboard or some other MIDI instrument. For more about this, see "MIDI Recording", Section 10.8, on page 206.

## 5.8.4 Step Time Recording



An alternative to Real Time Recording is Step Time Recording. Step Time Recording is done in MIDI and can be a very fast method of entering in notes (when you can't scan it in of course!). For more, turn to "Step Time Recording", Section 10.9.

---

## 6) Reformatting, Part Extraction & Page Setup (Score Structure)

---



The MIDI Edition will allow you to edit the score and even reformat page layout, etc. However, since MIDI Edition does not print, it doesn't make a lot of sense to spend time changing score layout because this edition will only create MIDI files and/or burn to CD.

### 6.1 Reformatting scores in ENF view

Measures, staff lines, systems and even pages can be resized, compressed or expanded while maintaining proper note spacing. Parts can be extracted from the score and/or recombined to form conductor's scores. Page layout and margins can then be selected, modified and previewed prior to printing.

**NOTE:** It's best to correct mistakes before reformatting the score because synchronization between the ENF window and the original scan window (in yellow) will probably become lost. Even if synchronization is lost, a floating Scan View reference window is available. For more details, see "Split-screen and scan view reference views", Section 7.11.1, on page 153.

#### 6.1.1 Nudge Mode (Barlines)

Several interesting and useful reformatting possibilities can be applied when barlines are repositioned in Nudge mode:

- Resizing adjacent measures by dragging barline horizontally. See "Nudge mode (Shift button)", Section 7.5, on page 120.
- Shuttling measures in/out of systems by dragging last barline. See "Repositioning measures using barlines", Section 7.5.6, on page 121.

#### 6.1.2 Adjusting measures

Measures can be compressed or expanded in Nudge mode. This may cause measures to scroll from system to system. Also, the number of measures per line may be set to a fixed number. These actions will cause the score to reformat.

For more details, see "Repositioning measures using barlines", Section 7.5.6, on page 121. For setting fixed number of measures per system, see "Set Number of Measures" in Section 7.3.2, "Staff Properties" on page 111.

### 6.1.3 Horizontal Reformatting

System widths can be changed one-by-one or globally.

*To globally change system widths,*

- See "Changing default margins", Section 6.3.2, on page 95.

Single system widths can be changed in the ENF main view by dragging either of the green tabs in the upper ruler margin.

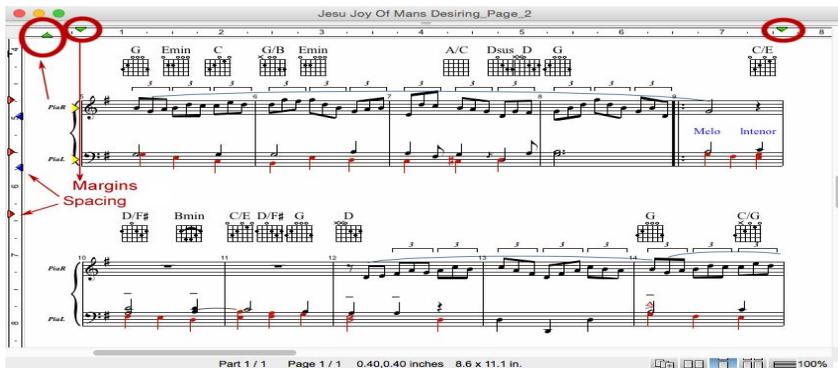


FIGURE 6 - 16: Using tabs to change staff distances and system widths

The lower green tab towards the left margin adjusts the position of instrument Part Names.

## 6.2 Vertical Reformatting (Line, staff and system spacing using tabs)

You can change distances between stafflines and systems using the red or blue tabs inside the left ruler of the active system. Changes made to a staffline or system spacings can then be applied globally to all other staff lines and systems using the **Staff/Line spacing** option inside the **Staff Properties** window (right click inside any system). See "Line/staff spacing", Section 7.3.1, on page 110 for more details.

### 6.2.1 Changing line spacing and distances in the active system (red tabs)

*To increase or decrease distances between staves and/or systems...*

- Position the cursor over a staff to make it active. The top and bottom red tab control the distance between the active system and the systems above and below it. The mid-

the red tabs adjust the distances between staves. The “T” tab on top controls the overall spacing above the system.

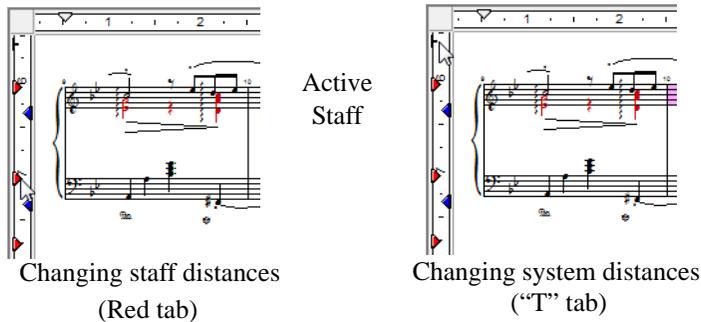


FIGURE 6 - 17: Using tabs to change staff distances and system widths

### 6.2.2 Changing staff line spacing in the active (Blue tabs)

Moving the blue (staff height) tabs not only increases the height of a single staffline, it also increases the size of all musical symbols inside that staff. To apply a staff height change to all remaining staves, use the “Copy to” command. See "Line/staff spacing", Section 7.3.1, on page 110

*To increase/decrease the height of individual staves...*

- Drag the blue tab aligned with the bottom line of any staff up or down. The staff will resize vertically.

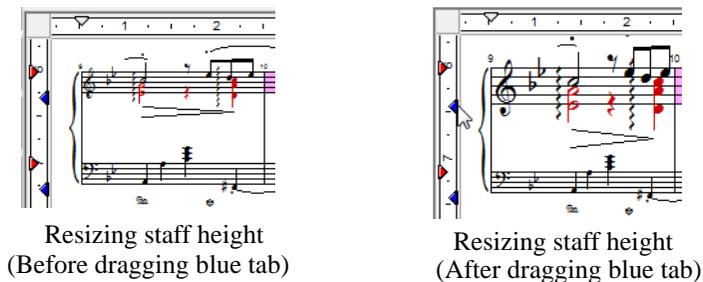


FIGURE 6 - 18: Using tabs to change staff distances and system widths

## 6.3 Document Page Setup

Your finished score will probably be printed out so you'll want to control how it will look beforehand. You may want to resize staves and systems or reformat the entire score. You may also want to extract and recombine parts and voices or create a conductor's score from separate parts. This chapter includes changing score structure, reformatting margins, page layout control and print preview.

*To preview and change a document's page layout,*

- Push **Page Setup** button in the **Navigator (File > Page Setup)**



If your score was created out of recognition, the **Document Layout** pull-down menu will show "From Recognition". Each page frame represents the exact area cropped when each page was scanned. Choices include selecting a default page size and orientation as well as centering music on the page or else choosing one of several preset layouts as described below.

### 6.3.1 Page Centering

*To apply selected page size / orientation and center music on pages,*

- a. Make sure your **Page Type** is correctly set to your paper size.
- b. In the **Document Page Setup** pull-down menu, select **Center on Page**.

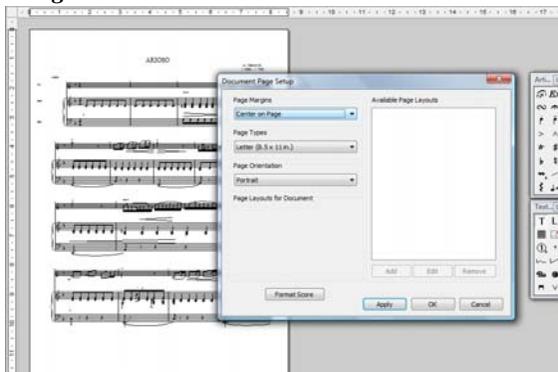


FIGURE 6 - 19: Document Page Setup (Center on Page)

- c. Push **Apply**. Score pages in the background update with changes.

**NOTE:** Each page can be fine-tuned by dragging either of the frame tabs in the left margin up or down. Use the bottom scroller to view and reposition each page up or

down if necessary. Once you are satisfied with the layout of your document, push **OK**.

### 6.3.2 Changing default margins

Page margins can be changed in the Page Setup window after selecting a layout choice and page type/orientation. Changes to margins must be made on a page-by-page basis.

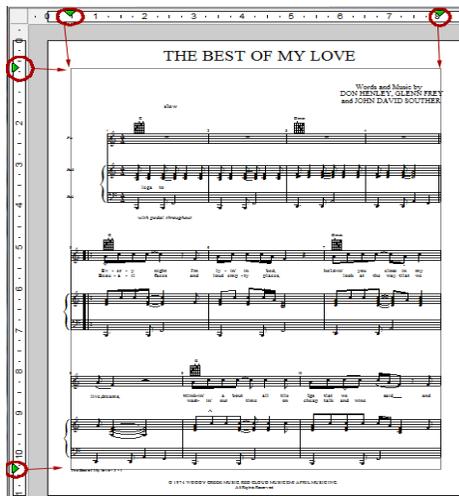


FIGURE 6 - 20: Document Page Setup (Center on Page)

- In Page Setup, change margins of each page by moving tabs inside the vertical and/or horizontal rulers.

**NOTE:** Changing margins is done on a page-by-page basis. Tabs inside vertical and horizontal rulers will affect only the active (highlighted) page. Move cursor over a page to make it active. To change width of a single system, see "Vertical Reformatting (Line, staff and system spacing using tabs)", Section 6.2, on page 92.

### 6.3.3 Changing page orientation of an ENF score

*To change page orientation of an entire ENF score (e.g. from Portrait to Landscape).*

- a. If you are changing layout from Portrait to Landscape, you should increase the number of measures per system (e.g. from 4 to 7). If Landscape to Portrait, decrease the number of measures per system (e.g. 8 to 4). See "Staff Properties", Section 7.3.2, on page 111.

- b. In **Page Setup**, choose the layout (e.g. Centered) then choose a page type and orientation (Landscape or Portrait).
- c. Move the left and right margin tabs to achieve the desired system width / margin spacing for each page.

In the page preview, you may see systems too close to the top or bottom of the page. Or you may see large gaps at the bottom or top of pages. You will need to change system distances in these cases.

- d. Push **Main View** button at the top of the page and zoom out to full-page view as necessary. Adjust staff and system distance spacing using the tabs along the left margin. For more information on vertical spacing tabs, see "Vertical Reformatting (Line, staff and system spacing using tabs)", Section 6.2, on page 92

### 6.3.4 Default Page Size and Type

In the English version of SmartScore, the default page size and type is *Letter / Portrait*. In European versions, *A4 / Portrait* is the default page type. The default for Page Type can be reset in **Edit > Program Preferences**.

*To permanently change your default Page Type and orientation,*

- a. Go to Edit > Program Preferences > **Page Type**
- b. Select "Letter", "Legal" or "A4" for your default page type / size.

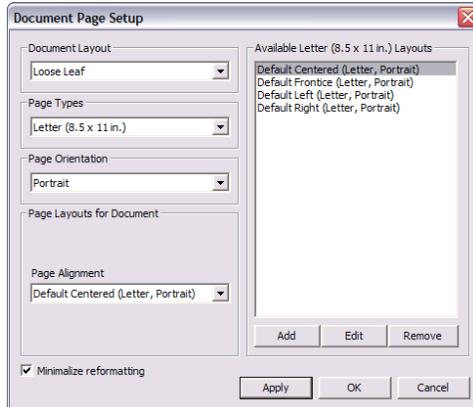
### 6.3.5 Custom document layouts

Custom document layouts (other than **Center to Page**) are intended for publishing printed scores that will be spiral bound or stitched together. Page margins and system widths will be altered depending the page size and orientation of the layout scheme you select. Since pages will probably become reformatted, you may see systems move from page to page. We recommend that you correct (edit) the full score first while the TIF-ENF panes are still synchronized.

NOTE: In the English version, *Page Type* size is "Letter". In European versions, "A4" is the default page type. The default for Page Type can be reset in Edit > Program Preferences.

- To select an alternative (custom) document layout,

Select the layout you want to apply from the Document Layout pull-down menu as described below:



### 6.3.6 Document Layout Defaults

*Page Layout:* **Loose Leaf**

*Single-sided pages with music centered in the middle of the page*

Page Alignment: Centered

Page Margins: 0.5" Top, Bottom, Left, Right

*Page Layout:* **Loose Leaf with Header Page**

*Single-sided, centered pages with first page having a 2" header:*

Front Page: **Centered**

Page Alignment: Centered

Page Margins: 3" Top (1st page). 0.5" inch Top, Bottom, Left, Right (remaining pages).

*Page Layout:* **Facing**

*Left / Right pages with increased inside margins for binding*

Left Page: 1.5" right margin

Right Page: 1.5" left margin

Page Margins: 0.5" Top, Bottom, Side (default)

## Page Layout: Facing with Header Page

Left / Right pages with first page having a 2" header

Front Page: Centered

Left Page: 1.5" right margin

Right Page: 1.5" left margin

Page Margins: 3" Top (1st page). 0.5" inch Top, Bottom, Left, Right (remaining pages).

You may wish to create your own personalized layout and add it to the existing layout schemes.

To create a new document layout:

- In Document Layout pull-down menu, select a Custom Layout (other than Center to Page). Push the **Add** button.
- Give a name to the new layout.
- Reset the numerical scrollers on Left, Right, Top and Bottom or simply click and drag the margin guides inside the preview window. You may also change page orientation and page type from the pull-down menus on the right.
- Push **OK** to create the new layout.

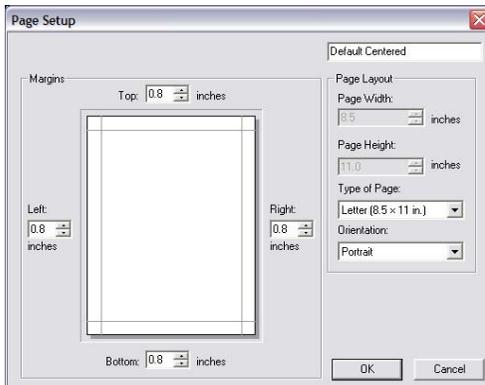


FIGURE 6 - 21: Default Page Margin Control

## 6.4 Edit > Format Score

This window provides tools that can reformat the ENF score including line and staff spacing, measures per system and even a tool that re-scales (optimizes) the ENF frame should your scanner force re-scaling the image instead of resetting dpi.

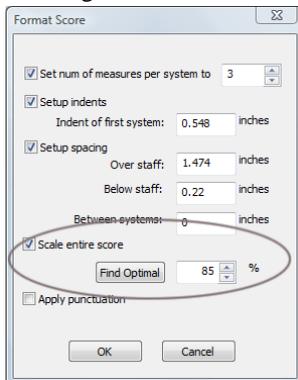


FIGURE 6 - 1: Format Score window

- **Measures per system**  
Select a fixed number of measures for every system in the score.
- **Apply punctuation**  
Apply auto-spacing to reformatted measures.
- **Setup indents**  
Set indent for 1st system.
- **Setup spacing.**  
Set staff and system spacing.
- **Scale entire score (optimize score size)**

Following recognition and before printing, scores can be resized up or down to fit the default page size. This is particularly useful when scores were incorrectly scaled by some scanners (e.g. all-in-one scanners); correcting overly large-scale or small-scale ENF files.

*To rescale the ENF score (optimize page size for printing)*

- a. Push **Find Optimal** button in **Format Score** window. The optimal ENF page resize amount is calculated and will appear in percentage window.
- b. Push **OK** to apply change in page size.

- c. Open **Page Setup** (File > Page Setup) and change Document Layout to “Center on Page”. Push **Apply** to view changes in Preview mode. Push **OK** to close Page Setup.

## 6.5 Using Score Structure to Extract & Join Parts

### 6.5.1 Structure and hierarchy

Score Structure (**Edit > Score Structure**) is a powerful tool that allows you to create entirely new scores by removing, creating and re-linking parts. By simply dragging links around, you have the ability to remove parts, extract parts and join individual part scores into multi-part “conductor” scores. See "Recognition Sequence", Section 3.5, on page 24 for more info.

NOTE: Using Score Structure is a graphical method for extracting / recombining parts. Another method is to use “visibility” control in the Master System. For more details, see "Extracting Parts", Section 7.4.3, on page 115

### 6.5.2 Extracting parts in Score Structure

- a. With multi-staff score open in ENF vies, select **Edit > Score Structure**.

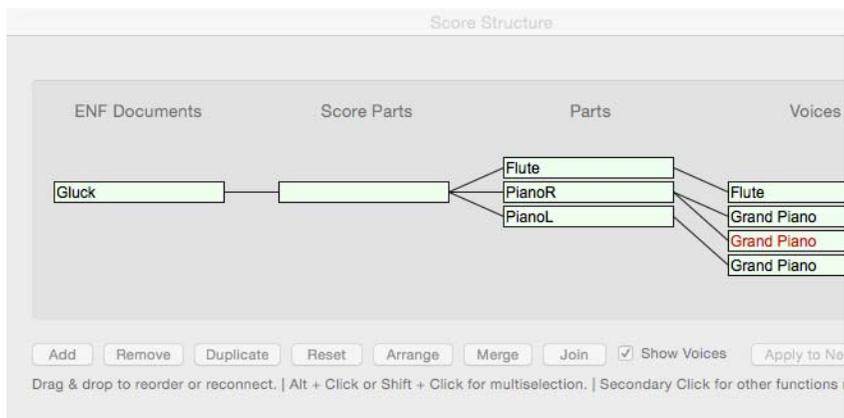


FIGURE 6 - 2: Score Structure (Typical Piano/Vocal Arrangement)

- b. To isolate the part/s you want to extract, click on all the parts you don't want and push the “Remove” button at the bottom of the screen.
- c. Push **Apply to New**. The extracted part/s will open in a new ENF document. Your original document will remain open and unaffected.

### 6.5.3 Creating a conductor's score from individual parts

- a. An ENF file was recognized from 3 part scores (each having one Part per Score-Part). A “Score-Part” consists of all the pages of a single instrument in a part score. Some Score-Parts may contain more than one Part (a piano Score-Part has 2 Parts and an organ Score-Part has 3 Parts). Let's view the structure of a part score and then combine all parts into one document.

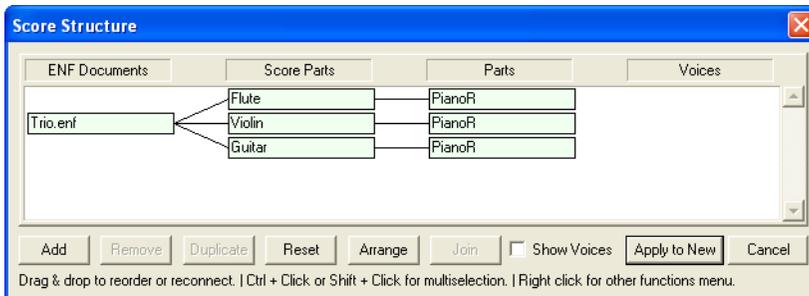


FIGURE 6 - 3: Score Structure (Typical 3 Score-Part structure)

To view score hierarchy & create a conductor's score from score parts,

- b. Click on any Score-Part to highlight it and push the **Insert** button at the bottom of the window. You will see a blank Score-Part appear.

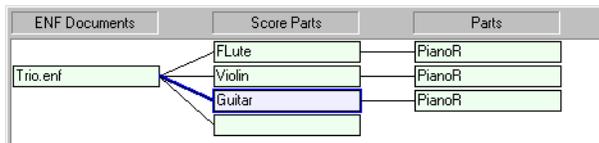
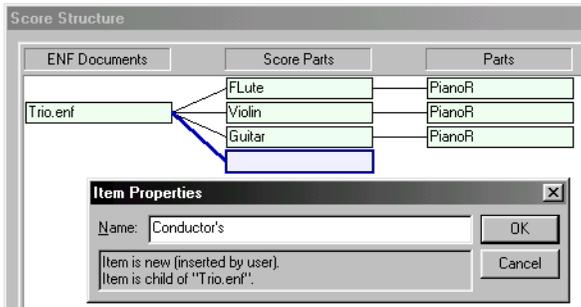
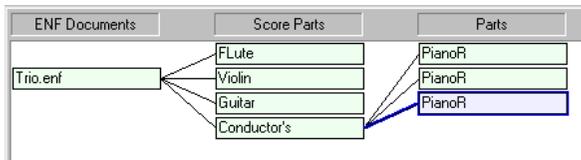


FIGURE 6 - 4: Inserting new Score-Part

**NOTE:** Inserting a new *ENF Document* will work just as well. In either case, applying the change (**Apply to New**) will create a brand new ENF document, leaving the original file untouched.



Naming new Score-Part in **Properties**



Re-linking Parts to new Score-Part



New Conductor's Score (Apply to New)

To the left, a new, empty Score-Part was **Inserted** (you could also re-link parts to an existing Score-Part). Here, the new Score-Part is given a name (Win: *Right-click / Mac: Option + click* to open its **Properties**). To relink any structural object, click on the object and drag it to another object in an adjacent column. Here, the three existing parts are relinked to the newly created Score-Part (named *Conductor's*).

FIGURE 6 - 5: Creating a Conductor's Score

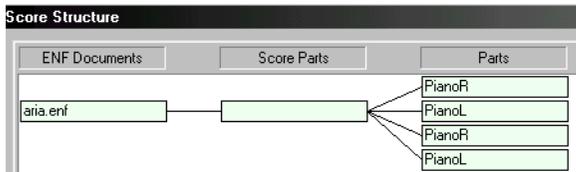
Highlight the unlinked Score-Parts and push **Remove**. Push **Apply to New**. The modified structure is transformed to a new ENF document.

NOTE: Newly-created documents will have the same name of the source file plus “1”, “2” etc.

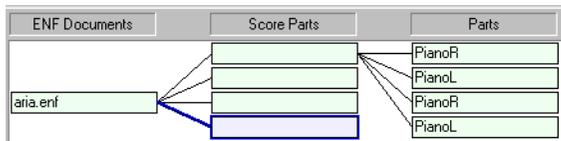
### 6.5.4 Creating Part Scores from Ensemble Scores

Extracting instrumental parts out of a conductor's score in Score Structure is similar to creating a conductor's score from score-parts, just reversed. NOTE: All SmartScore files (ENF documents) must contain at least one Score-Part linked to at least one Part.

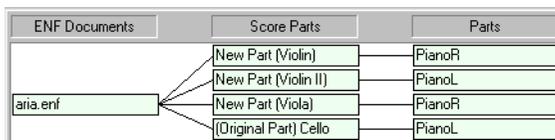
- a. Open an ENF file with 2 or more staves per system.
- b. Select **Edit > Score Structure**.



Ensemble score having 4 parts



Inserting New Score-Parts



Naming and re-inking  
Parts to New Score-Parts

Here is a typical “ensemble” score containing several parts linked to it. Since all parts are joined, there is only one Score-Part.

Click on the empty Score-Part and push **Insert** to create three new Score-Parts. Drag each Part (*child*) to new Score Parts (*parent*) to deconstruct the ENF document. Right-click (**option** + **click** for *Mac*) in **Properties** and give a name to each.

FIGURE 6 - 6: Creating Score Parts from Ensemble scores

Push **Apply to New**. This will create a new document with 4 Score-Parts arranged in order (all pages of Part 1 first, then all pages of Part 2, etc). Playback remains synchronized. Again, the original ENF document will remain open and unchanged.

## 7.1 Quick Keys



*TIP:* Refer to the Quick Keys map (FIGURE 7 - 4:) for a graphic depiction of all SmartScore keyboard shortcut keys.

### 7.1.1 Quick-select (Ctrl + Click)

The fastest way to choose any object for inserting, deleting or changing is to **Quick-select** it first. **Ctrl + Click** on any object inside the active staff and the cursor inherits all of that object's attributes. The cursor becomes any object that is **Quick-Selected**.

#### 7.1.2 Inserting and changing symbols (“C”)

*To insert a symbol anywhere in the active staffline,*

- Toggle the “C” key to activate the **Insert** mode.
- Quick-select** any symbol or select it from a tool palette.
- Click inside the active staff to insert the object.

*To change the rhythmic value of an existing note or rest,*

- Quick-select** (Ctrl+click) a nearby note or rest having the desired value. Or select a new value from the “Notes” or “Rests” palette.
- Position the cursor over the symbol to be changed until it highlights yellow. Click to change it to the selected value.

**NOTE:** When you **Quick-select** on any object inside the active staff, the palette associated with the object will open.

#### 7.1.3 Deleting notes and symbols (“X”)

*To delete an object in the active staff,*

- Quick-select** (Ctrl + Click) a note or non-lyric symbol.
- Press the “X” key and click on any note or non-lyric symbol to delete it.

*To delete one or more object using the Select tool,*

- Press the **Select** tool icon in the Toolbar.
- Click on an object or drag a region to select one or more objects.
- Hit the **Delete** key to delete selected object(s).

## 7.1.4 Select tool (“O”)



Use the **Select** tool to highlight one or more objects for single or mass editing functions such as copying, deleting, splitting voices, flipping stem directions and joining notes of different voices to a vertical event. The “O” key activates this tool. Its button is found in the Toolbar.



*TIP:* Use the **Select tool + Delete** key to remove any object other than lyrics and bar-lines. It is especially useful for removing a large number of spurious or unwanted text or multiple objects that do not delete easily with the “X” key.

*To delete one or more objects including notes, rests and symbols,*

- a. Push the Select tool icon in the Toolbar (“O” key) and click on an object or drag to select multiple objects to delete.
- b. Hit the **Delete** key.

**NOTE:** Occasionally, you might find an area full of incorrectly recognized ties and/or slurs or hairpins. Use this tool to “mass-delete” these objects.

### 7.1.4a Cut, Copy, Paste, Insert and Merge selected symbols

Refer to Section 11.3.3 through Section 11.3.5b for details on how to use the Select Tool to clone measures or entire score segments and place them elsewhere in the music.

### 7.1.5 Using the Select Tool (“O”) to edit selected objects

A group of selected notes on the same staff can be transformed into one beamed group if they are flagged or they can be pitch-shifted at once.

*To convert a sequence of flagged notes into one beamed group,*

- a. Use the Select tool (“O”) to select a group of adjacent flagged notes to be beamed together.
- b. Hit the “B” key to form the flagged notes into a beamed group.

*To move a selected group of notes upwards or downwards in pitch,*

*To delete spurious articulations on a page,*

- c. Use the Select tool (“O”) to select an entire region for cleanup. **Edit > Select All (Ctrl + A)** will select everything on the current page.
- d. Hit the “G” key. Only articulations will be deleted. All other notation objects remain unaffected.

## 7.2 Transposition

SmartScore offers several types of transposition options depending on your needs. You can transpose by **key**, the most common type of transposition. Transposing by **clef** is useful for transforming one instrument to another written in another clef sign. You can also choose to transpose by altering note pitches only, either considering the active key signature or by ignoring the active key signature. Using the **Limit** option, you can choose a specified range, part or voice to transpose.

*To Transpose your entire ENF document to a new key,*

- a. Position your cursor inside the first staffline of the score. Press **Ctrl + T / Cmnd + T** for *Mac* or select the **Transpose** button in the Toolbar or select **Transpose** from the **Edit** menu. The window in Transposition always displays the key signature or clef sign of the *active staff*. This is your source key.

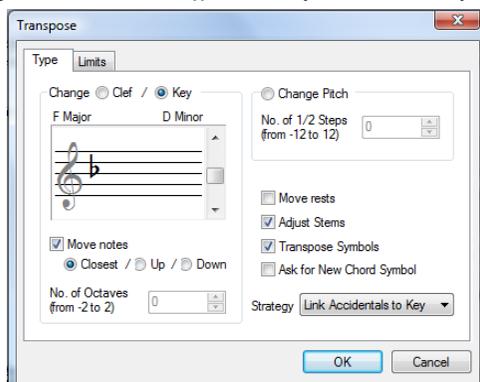


FIGURE 7 - 7: Transposition window

- b. Select a new target key or target clef for the score by selecting either the **Key** or **Clef** tab. Scroll up or down to select a target key signature or target clef.
- c. **Closest** allows SmartScore to automatically choose up or down based on the least number of intervals. To choose the direction manually, select either **Up** or **Down**.

**NOTE:** It is recommended that you fully edit your score before transposing. If your score contains incorrect change-of-key signatures and/or guitar fret and chord symbols, it may be hard to Undo properly. Also, the scanned score won't transpose and visual checking of pitches will be difficult after transposition.

## 7.2.1 Transposition Strategy

You can choose two “strategies” for transposing your scores: **Link Accidentals to Key** and **Keep Line-space**.

- Link Accidentals to Key

This choice will consider the target key signature during transposition. If the target key belongs to the opposite class than that of the source key (e.g. transposing from a key with sharps to a target key with flats), then accidentals may be swapped to their harmonic equivalents.

- Keep Line-Space

This choice will retain exact relationships between intervals after transposition is completed. Accidentals will generally remain fixed. No attempt will be made to swap harmonic equivalents of accidentals. For example, c and d# may transpose up to c# and d double-#.

- Transpose Symbols

To transpose guitar fret and chord symbols to match the new target key, check this box. This selection will also move articulations, such as slurs, up or down along with notes and rests. If necessary, guitar fret and chord symbols may move up to avoid collisions with upwardly-transposed notes.

- Ask For New Chord Symbol

This option allows you to accept or change each transposed guitar fret and chord symbol during transposition. Use this option when you know you won't accept default fretboard patterns or when you know you will need to add new fret and chord symbols to the library.

- Adjust Stems

Stem directions will be maintained unless this box is checked. It is important to remember, however, that adjusting the direction of stems may create voicing problems. Automatic voiceline recognition relies heavily on stem directions. Flipping stems as they cross the mid-staff point can create unexpected results. Best Bet: Adjust Stems = **Off**. Use Undo (**Ctrl + Z / Cmnd + Z** for Mac) if necessary.

- Move Notes

Uncheck this box to leave the notes in their original positions. This will transpose only key signatures, leaving notes unchanged... good for mental games, but not much more.

- Change Pitch

This transposes notes without changing the key signature. Select the number of half-steps to move selected notes (harmonic pitch shift). Pitches are moved by a uniform interval while considering the key signature. Change Pitch can be used in conjunction with Limits tab.



*TIP:* To shift the pitch of a small range of notes, it is easier to use the **Select** tool (**O**). Hold the **Shift** key down, drag the selected notes up or down.

## 7.2.2 Limit Transposition

You may limit transposition to a part or voice or to a selected range within the ENF score.

*To limit transposition by part, voice or range,*

- Click on the **Limit** tab at the top of the Transposition window.

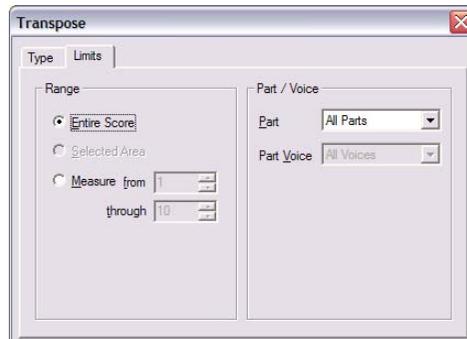


FIGURE 7 - 8: Limit Transposition

- Choose **All Parts**, or select individual parts by name to transpose. If you select a single part, you may also limit the scope of transposition to a single voiceline. In the **Part Voice** box, select the voice to transpose.
- To limit transposition by range, choose **Selected Area** (range must already be highlighted by the Select tool) or by **Measure** number.
- Click **OK** to transpose with selected limits applied.

## 7.3 Score Properties

The “Score Properties” window contains powerful options for controlling staff and system spacing, bracketing and part linking (for re-linking parts in optimized systems). Other major editing functions include adding or removing a part (staff) to the score (Section 7.3.8), adding or deleting a system(Section 7.3.7) and appending a score-part to the ENF file (Section 7.3.9).

- a. Select “Score Properties” from the FILE menu, Or, with **Properties Tool** selected, **right-click** (**alt / option** + click for Mac) inside any staff line of any system.

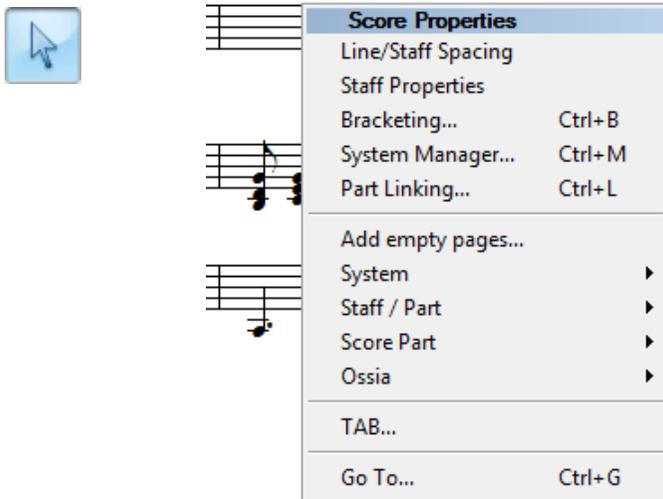


FIGURE 7 - 9: Score Properties (Right-click inside staff line)

### 7.3.1 Line/staff spacing

With the Score Properties window open, select “Staff / Line Spacing”.

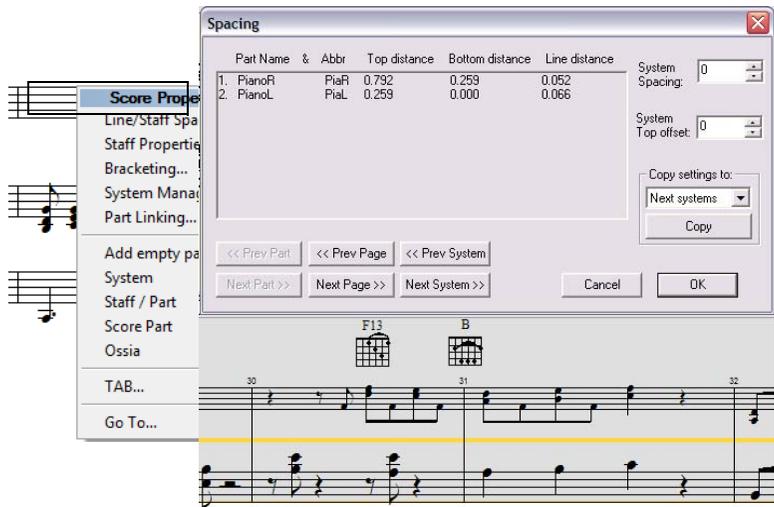


FIGURE 7 - 10: Line/staff spacing window

The **Spacing** window provides a method to make and uniformly apply changes in staff and system distances to the remainder of the score. Measurements shown are numerical representations of distances for all staff lines the active system. Changes to staff line and system spacing can be made on a system-by-system basis using colored spacing tabs along the left-hand ruler. See "Vertical Reformatting (Line, staff and system spacing using tabs)", Section 6.2.

Here are some practical examples:

- Improve page layout by optimizing number systems in pages.
- Create piano accompaniments with smaller (reduced) solo parts.
- Create large-notehead (“E-Z Read” format) scores.
- Resize staves converted from TAB to melody and vice-versa.

*To numerically change staffline and system spacing,*

- a. Select FILE > “Score Properties”. Or, **Right-click** (**alt + click** for Mac) inside a staff line. In Score Properties, choose “**Line/staff spacing**” among the options.
- b. Make changes to staff line distances and to top / bottom staff spacing in the active system. Push **OK** to view changes.

To apply distance changes to other systems in the score,

- Once changes in distances are confirmed in the ENF display, **right-click** on the source system and select **Staff Line Spacing** again to continue.
- In the **Copy Settings To** area, select either “*Next Systems*” or “*All Systems*”. Next Systems will change subsequent systems and All Systems will change all systems in the score.
- Push **Copy** to apply the changes.

Push **OK** to close the window.

- Use the *Next System* or *Previous System* buttons to compare settings. To visually check changes in the ENF display, push **OK** and examine changes made.

### 7.3.2 Staff Properties



With Properties Tool arrow, click into any yellow marker to the left of a staff line. Staff properties for that part are shown in the window.

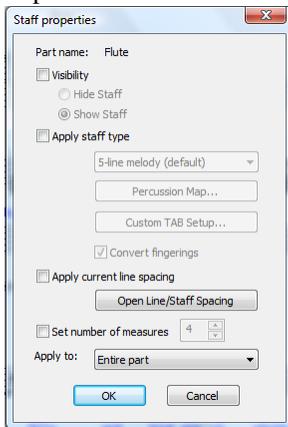


FIGURE 7 - 11: Staff Properties window

Editable properties include:

- Visibility:** View or hide active staff line.  
NOTE: Turning off visibility permanently removes all notation symbols.
- Apply Staff Type:** Change the characteristics of the staff (e.g. change a “melody” staff to a TAB or percussion staff). For information on creating and editing TAB and percussion staff lines, see Chapter 9, “Working with TAB & Drums”

- **Apply Current Line Spacing:** Select to apply current staffline spacing to other staves in the system or score.
- **Set number of Systems:** Select number of measures per line to apply to current or other systems.
- **Apply to:** Select which staff lines will have selected property changes applied: Current, subsequent (System+) or all (Score).

**7.3.3 Bracketing:** See "Bracketing", Section 8.4.3, on page 172.

**7.3.4 System Manager:** See "System Manager", Section 7.4, on page 113.

**7.3.5 Part Linking:** See "Re-linking parts", Section 4.14, on page 69.

The following sections of the **Score Properties** window (File > Score Properties) addresses adding/removing parts (staff lines), systems, pages and score parts to the score.

**7.3.6 Add empty page**

This command will append an empty page to the end of the score.

**7.3.7 System > Insert above/Insert below/Remove**

Select one of these commands to insert a new, empty system above or below the active system or to delete the active system.

NOTE: Added systems will include every part contained in the Super System. See Section 7.4.6, "Super System" for details. If it's necessary, individual parts (staff lines) within any system can be optimized or made "invisible". Refer to "Visibility" in "Staff Properties", Section 7.3.2 for details

**7.3.8 Staff / Part > Insert / Remove**

Use to insert a new part into the score or to remove the active staff line from the system. The "Insert" command is identical to the "Add Part" button found in the System Manager (see "Adding a new part to the score", Section 7.4.5, on page 116). The "Remove" command removes only the active staff line from the current system. To remove an entire part from the score, refer to "Deleting parts", Section 7.4.8, on page 118

**7.3.9 Score-Part > Insert above/Insert below/Remove**

Select one of these commands to insert a new, empty Score-Part or to remove the active Score-Part. A Score-Part is one of a multiple set of pages for a piece that is scored for separately-sheeted parts. For details, see "Scanning Part Scores (Score-Parts)", Section 3.6, on page 28.

### 7.3.10 Ossia

Use this tool to delete or insert an ossia above or below the active staff. Inserted ossias are editable just as any normal staffline except that ossias are not played back.



FIGURE 7 - 12: Ossia

*To resize an ossia,*

- Hold the **Shift** key down (**Nudge** mode) and drag either of the control points at either end of the ossia. Barline, key and time signature information is inherited from its associated staffline.
- Re-space ossias using tabs in the left margin just as any staffline.

### 7.3.11 TAB

This command opens the “Staff Properties” window and applies “6-string guitar” TAB

### 7.3.12 Go to.

- Use this tool to jump to a new measure, page or score part.

## 7.4 System Manager

Use the System Manager to add, assign or change instrumental parts, change part names and to extract parts and voices by controlling visibility.

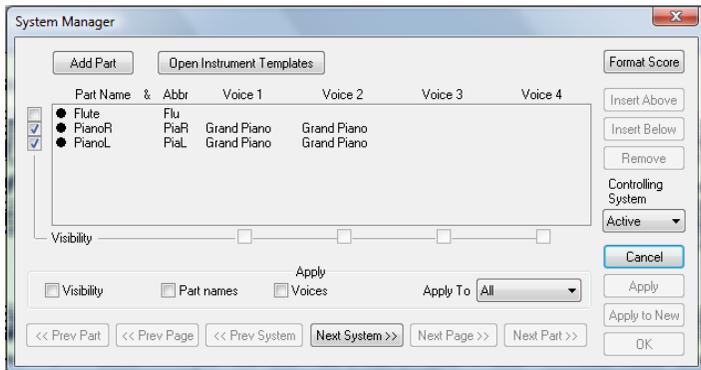


FIGURE 7 - 13: System Manager window

The System Manager displays information about what is found in the active system (the highlighted system). Changes made can be applied to the current system, current plus subsequent systems, to the entire score or limited to the current Score-Part.

*To open the System Manager,*

- a. Position the cursor over a given system in the ENF view.
- b. Press (**Ctrl+M / Cmnd+M**) or select **Edit > System Manager** from menu. All parameters of the *active system* will be displayed including part name, visibility and assigned MIDI instruments.



Parts of the system run vertically along the far left column. Checkmarks identify whether parts are “visible” in the active system. Voices run horizontally with checkmarks below which identify the status of their visibility.

### 7.4.1 Part Names

When a **Part Name** is selected in the System Manager, playback parameters are inherited from **Instrument Templates**, including pitch shifting of transposed instrument.

*To select a Part Name,*

- a. Click into a desired instrument name in the **Part Name** column. Select one of preset instruments. Notice that MIDI instruments for each voice become updated.
- b. If you wish to add a new part name with a unique MIDI instrument assignment, select “**Add New Part**” from the top of the pull-down list. This will open Instrument Templates and allow you to create a new template, name it and assign any MIDI instrument and alter transposition pitch shifting.

Abbreviated Part Names are shown by default in the first system of the ENF main view. To change or remove Part Name display, see "Document Preferences", Section 11.1.1

### 7.4.2 Assigning MIDI Instruments to Voices (General MIDI Playback only)

Voices inherit MIDI instrument assignments from Instrument Templates initially. You can change MIDI instrument assignment for voices (in Voice mode) or parts (Part mode) in the System Manager or Playback Console.

*TIP:* Assigning each voice a different instrument adds richer sound texture and helps in hearing “inner voicings” of the music. Highly recommended for classes in composition.



**NOTE:** Playback Console and System Manager are linked. Changes made to MIDI instruments in one environment will update the other. MIDI instrument assign-

ments in Instrument Templates are not changed automatically. They can only be changed manually.

*To change MIDI instruments for voices in System Manager,*

- In System Manager, click on any voice of any part and select a new MIDI instrument in the pull-down menu.

NOTE: Changes made to instruments in System Manager or the Playback Console will not be applied to playback when the Aria player (VST or AU) is active.

### 7.4.3 Extracting Parts

NOTE: Part and voice extraction can be accomplished using either System Manager or the **Score Structure** environment, a graphically-based score display. Many find Score Structure to be easier to use for part extraction. See "Using Score Structure to Extract & Join Parts", Section 6.5, on page 100 for details.



In the **System Manager**, look for “Visibility” checkboxes along the far left side and along the bottom of the list of parts. Checkmarks identify which parts are active (visible) in the current system. Individual parts and/or voices can also be made “visible” or “invisible” by selective use of these Visibility checkboxes.

Let’s say we want to extract a contrapuntal voice from the right hand part of a vocal / piano arrangement.

*To extract a voice from an existing part,*

- a. Select **Edit > System Manager (Ctrl+M (Cmnd+M Mac))**.
- b. Remove check marks of all parts and voices except for the part and voice you wish to target.

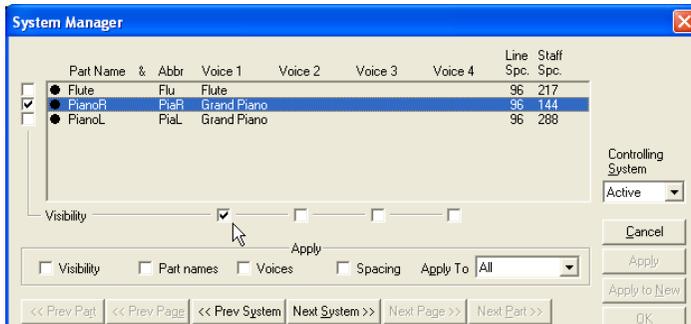


FIGURE 7 - 14: Selecting Voices to be extracted

- c. Make sure “**Visibility**” in lower left-hand corner is checked.

- d. Press **Apply to New** to create a new score, leaving the current file unaffected. Or press **OK** to isolate the part in the open document.

The extracted vocal part from the vocal/piano score will appear like this:



FIGURE 7 - 15: Extracted Voice

#### 7.4.4 Extracting Voices

*To extract a voice from the score,*

- a. Highlight a visible part by clicking on the dot next to *Part Name*.
- b. Check or uncheck the **Visibility** box below the desired voice number depending on which voice(s) you wish to extract.
- c. Select **Visibility** in the **Apply** field and choose **Apply to New** from the **Apply To** pull-down menu. This will extract all checked parts to a new ENF document while keeping the original document unchanged. The **Apply** option alters the current document. **Apply to New** will create a new, separate ENF document.

#### 7.4.5 Adding a new part to the score

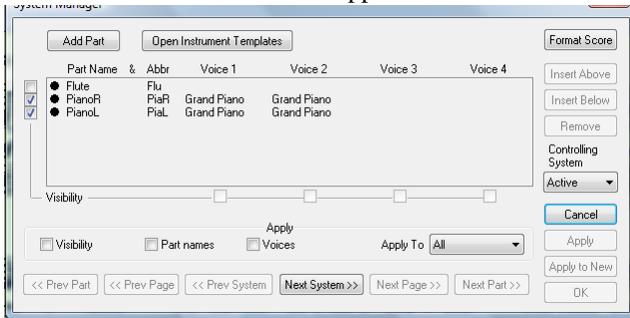
To insert a new part into the score, push the “Add Part” button in the System Manager. This is the same as choosing Staff/Part > “Insert” option in **Score Properties** window (see "Score Properties", Section 7.3, on page 109). To restore “invisible” parts to systems, see "Restoring a missed or “invisible” staff line", Section 4.13.2, on page 67.

*To add a new part to the entire score,*



- a. Open **System Manager** (**Ctrl+M** or select File > System Manager from the menu).

- b. Push the “Add Part” button at the upper left corner of the window.



- c. A similar, but more detailed window will open. This is the **Super System**. It represents all existing parts in the score, whether they’re visible or not in any particular system. The Super System can also be opened from the **Controlling System** pull-down menu in the System Manager.

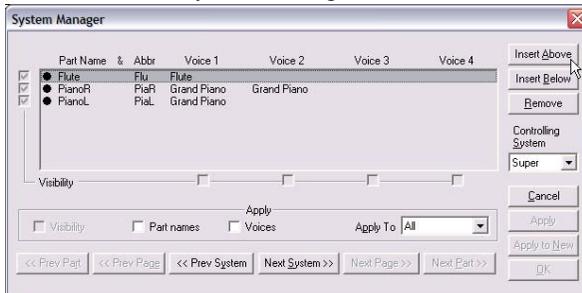


FIGURE 7 - 16: Creating a new part using Super System in System Manager

- d. Highlight an existing part where you want the newly-added part to be placed by clicking on the black dot to the left.
- e. Choose **Insert Above** or **Insert Below** and press “Apply”.
- f. The System Manager window will appear displaying the active system and all visible parts including the newly-added part.
- g. In the “Apply to” pull-down menu, choose how this current part configuration will be applied throughout the score: All systems, current system, current system plus all subsequent systems, current Score/Part or, in some cases, to the Super System.

## 7.4.6 Super System

The **Super System** is a “receptacle” that holds all existing parts in the score. All parts (staff lines), whether visible or not, are stored and displayed in this special area. The Super System display is found in the **System Manager** window under the “Controlling System” pull-down menu.

Sometimes “optimized” music is scored for more instruments than may appear in any single system of the score. If the total number of possible instruments exceeds even the largest system in the score, parts need to be added to the **Super System** as described above. SmartScore assumes that all possible instruments are equal to the system with the largest number of parts. For playback will sound correct, parts in optimized systems need to be reassigned to their appropriate instruments. See "Maintaining playback continuity", Section 4.13, on page 66 and "Re-linking parts", Section 4.14, on page 69 for more details. Parts (staff lines) can be added either from the System Manager or the Staff Properties window.

## 7.4.7 Part Visibility

Any part of any system can be made “visible” or “invisible”. This is called “optimizing” a system. This is useful in those sections where a part is *tacit* or silent for several systems and/or pages. Optimizing systems can be accomplished using System Manager or the “Visibility” check box in the **Staff Properties** window (See "Staff Properties", Section 7.3.2, on page 111).

*To make parts visible or invisible using System Manager,*

- a. Make sure *Controlling System* is **Active**.
- b. Check (or uncheck) the **Visibility** box next to each Part Name you wish to affect.
- c. Check **Visibility** in the *Apply* region below the parts matrix.
- d. Select the option, **Apply To = All** if you wish the part to be visible or invisible in all systems.
- e. Select **System** if you only want to affect in active system.
- f. Select **System +** if you want to affect the current and all subsequent systems.
- g. Push **OK**.

## 7.4.8 Deleting parts

*To permanently delete a part from a score.*

- a. Open **System Manager (Cntl + M)** and select **Super System** from the **Controlling System** menu.

- b. Click the dot corresponding to the part you wish to remove. Push **Remove**.
- c. Push “**Apply to New**” to create a new document without changing the original. Otherwise, push “**Apply**” and “**OK**”.

Removing a part is not the same as “Part extraction”. To extract a part to a new document, see "Extracting Parts", Section 7.4.3, on page 115.

Besides the “Add Part” button, there are two other useful buttons visible in the System Manager: Instrument Templates and Format Score...

### 7.4.9 Instrument Templates

Many characteristics of parts in the System Manager are inherited from **Instrument Templates** including part name, abbreviation, MIDI instrument assignment and playback pitch transposition. To open, push “**Open Instrument Templates**” button in System Manager. See "Instrument Templates", Section 4.10.2, on page 61 for more details.

### 7.4.10 Format Score

Changes to both horizontal and vertical formats can be easily made. For detailed information, turn to "Reformatting scores in ENF view", Section 6.1.

### 7.4.11 Applying changes in System Manager to the score

Changes you make to System Manager will apply to the area of interest you select in the “**Apply To**” pull-down menu:

- **System**

Applies only to the currently active system.

- **System+**

Applies to the currently active system and all subsequent systems.

- **Score/Part**

Applies to the Score or Score-Part.

- **Super System (Do not use except in extraordinary cases)**

Changes will be applied only to the Super System.

- **All**

Applies the change to all systems of the score. Select this when you want your changes to be globally applied.

Once your changes have been set, select where you want the changes to be applied:

- **Apply**

The selected changes will be applied to the currently open ENF document.

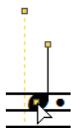
- **Apply to New**

This action will create a new document with your applied changes. The original document will remain unchanged. Both ENF documents will remain open. The newly-created document will have “(1)” appended to its name.

## 7.5 Nudge mode (Shift button)

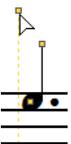
By holding the **Shift** button down, the display switches to a special edit mode. Active control points are shown as orange boxes.

### 7.5.1 Changing note pitches



- Click and drag the control point (center of notehead) up or down.

### 7.5.2 Moving notes and rests horizontally



- Each note contains two horizontal “anchors”; one above the staff and one below. Click and drag either control point to nudge a note or rest horizontally.
- To move multiple symbols horizontally, use the “O” key to select the objects. Drag the “pull point” of any object left or right.
- To compress or expand symbols within a measure or within an entire staff line, refer to "Repositioning measures using barlines", Section 7.5.6.

### 7.5.3 Resizing beam angles and note stems



- Dragging the endpoint of a beam or note stem will increase or decrease its length.

### 7.5.4 Repositioning text fields linked to an active staffline.



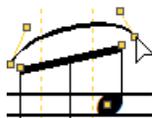
- All text fields are linked to an active staff line. To reveal the control point for each text field, position your cursor over its associated staffline and then locate the control point of the text field.

### 7.5.5 Reshaping arcs and slurs

Slurs (legatos) can be reshaped in two ways:

- By moving end points of the arc or
- By controlling the shape of the curve with either Bezier control handles.

End points control the placement of the slur.

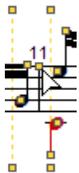


Bezier handles control the shape of the slur.



FIGURE 7 - 17: Reshaping slurs

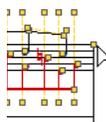
### 7.5.6 Repositioning measures using barlines



To horizontally reposition all symbols in adjacent measures:

- In **Nudge** mode, moving barlines to the left or right will reposition symbols in measures adjacent to the barline. Symbols will become more spaced out or more contracted depending on the direction. This is helpful when a particular measure becomes crowded. Try it! Notice that relative note spacing (punctuation) is retained when measures are expanded or contracted.

To horizontally reposition all symbols in a staff line:



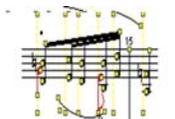
- Moving the barline at the **end of a system** will compress symbols in the **entire system** and all relative note spacing will still be kept intact. If a barline at the end of a system is moved far enough to the left, the first measure of the following system will reposition itself to become the last measure of the active system.

NOTE: For more details, see "Vertical Reformatting (Line, staff and system spacing using tabs)", Section 6.2, on page 92.

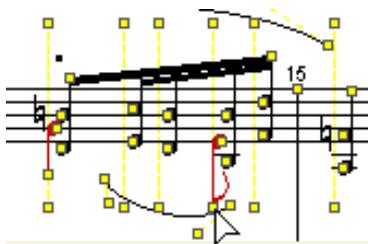
### 7.5.7 Special fixes possible with Nudge mode



Flag of note in secondary voice (red) causes stem in primary voice (black) to become offset.



In Nudge mode (Shift), dragging red note stem downward makes room and offset is corrected.



Flagged note in secondary voice causes offset in primary voice.

After dragging note stem control point downward, offset is corrected.

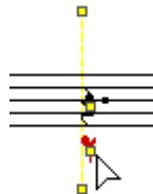
FIGURE 7 - 18: Improving flagged note positioning by lengthening its note stem

### 7.5.7a Fixing offset notes & rests belonging to two voices

Notes and/or rests belonging to different voices (within the same vertical event) will automatically offset when positioned next each other. This is meant to avoid collisions between the two. Depending on the situation, readjusting position offset objects is possible:



Offset rests due to close vertical proximity.



Offset corrected after dragging.

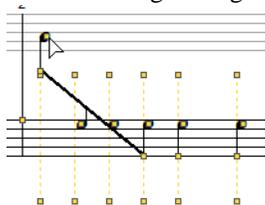
FIGURE 7 - 19: Offset due to rests too closely positioned

### 7.5.7b Fixing beam angles

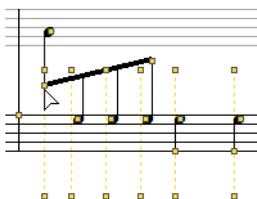
Beam angles are a function of the length of note stems within the beam. By dragging note stems up or down, the angle of the beam will change. Control points at the end of beams can also be dragged up or down to adjust overall beam angle.

If a beam collides with note stems or appears at odd angles after moving or deleting notes, click & drag the control point on either beam end. Drag beam end until it is properly positioned. Stems of notes alternate as the beam angle is changed.

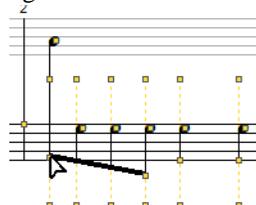
Use the stem-lengthening method to control cross-staff beaming:



Beam colliding with note stem



Drag beam control point to flip stem direction



Drag beam control point to change beam angle

FIGURE 7 - 20: Controlling cross-staff beams

## 7.6 Tool Palettes

All notation symbols used in SmartScore can be selected from the Tool palettes. By default, up to 3 palettes remain open at one time. Palettes “recycle” by default, but you may have all open at once.

NOTE: Tool palette buttons are expandable. Any button with a small arrow in the lower right corner will expand to reveal all possible symbols when held down with the left mouse button for several seconds.



FIGURE 7 - 21: Expandable tool palettes

*To replace an open Tool Palette with another palette type,*

- a. Right-click on any open Tool Palette. (Mac: **Ctrl + click**).

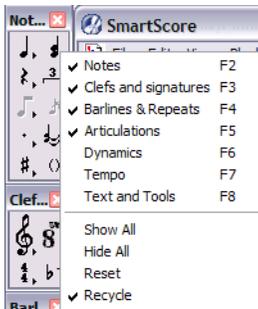


FIGURE 7 - 22: Tool Palette Selection

- b. Click to select an alternative palette.



NOTE: The **F1** key (*Reset Workspace* icon in Toolbar) always resets windows and palettes to their default positions.

*To change palette display behavior,*

- a. Right-click (**Ctrl + click** for Mac) onto any open tool palette.
- b. At the bottom of the Palette window, choose one of 4 alternative modalities for palette behavior including:
  - **Recycle** (Default):

This changes the *secondary* open palette when a Quick Key is activated. The *Notes* palette remains open and does not cycle. Show All opens all 9 SmartScore

Tool Palettes.

- **Hide All:**

This removes all Tool Palettes from view.



### 7.6.1 Notes and Rests palette

#### 7.6.1a Inserting Notes and Rests (Numeric keys)

- Select a note or rest from either of the *Notes* or *Rests* buttons located in the “Notes” palette. Left-click and hold for two seconds to expand the palette revealing all possible notes or rests.
- Press the “C” key to activate **Insert** mode.
- The cursor will display the selected symbol along with a grey dot which indicates the line or space on the staff. Click to insert.

**NOTE:** Use “Quick-select” (Ctrl+click) to select any symbol on the page, including notes and rests, Press any numeric key from 1 through 0 to select a particular note value. “**Shift + 1-0**” will select rests.

#### 7.6.1b Cluster tool

See "Editing note clusters", Section 5.2.9, on page 80.

#### 7.6.1c Multi-measure rests

- Select the “n-measures” object from the “Rests” palette.
- Select the number of empty measures.
- Click in an empty measure of the active staffline.

#### 7.6.1d Tuplets (T)

The “**T**” key opens the tuplet (Rhythmic Groups) Palette. Triplet is selected as the default. Drag the mouse to box in the notes/rests to become the selected tuplet. Drag downwards to insert the tuplet above the selected notes/rests. Drag upwards to insert the tuplet below selected notes/rests. For details, see Tuplets (Section 4.4.1 on page 44)

*To delete a tuplet or articulation*

- Ctrl+click** on it, press the “**X**” key then click again on the object. Or use the Select tool (“**O**” key) to highlight one or more tuplets and/or legatos.
- Once selected, push the **Delete** key.

**NOTE:** To resize or move a tuplet bracket, use **Nudge** mode and drag the control point located on either end of the tuplet.

- User-defined Tuplet



The **D:B** tool button allows for custom tuplets.

**Divisions** = The number of equal beats to be applied to the group.

**Value** = The number of note values (if they were not modified) that would be applied to give the same duration.

For example: The quintuplet (-5-) has a default D:B ratio of 5:4. When applied to a group of 5 eighth notes, its total duration value would equal 4 “normal” eighth notes.

- Nested tuplets (tuplet within a tuplet)

Choose the value required from the “Rhythmic Groups” palette. Click and drag the cursor to select a tuplet group within another tuplet. A bracket will drop identifying the nested tuplet.

### 7.6.1e Beam tool

See "Inserting, changing and deleting beamed notes", Section 5.2.10, on page 81.

### 7.6.1f Grace Notes



While in **Insert** mode, select a rhythmic value and press the **grace note** button in the “Notes” palette. Click before any note in the active staff to insert a grace note. ENF playback will insert the grace note and truncate the duration of either the following or the previous note.

*To control how grace notes play back*

- Select **Edit > Document Preferences > Playback**

Change default playback characteristics for grace notes:

- On the beat (acciaciatura)
- Before the beat
- If “Before the beat” is selected and the grace note begins a measure, the grace note will have to be placed at the very end of the previous measure. For more information, see Grace notes (Section 7.6.1f on page 125)

### 7.6.1g Dots of Prolongation

- Select the “**D**” key, dot or double dot from the “Notes” or “Rests” palette. Click on any notehead to attach a dot of prolongation.



*To delete a dot of prolongation,*

- Press the “**D**” key again and click on the notehead.

## 7.6.1h Ties



Ties connect contiguous notes of the same pitch causing the first note to sound for the duration of both notes. Ties are *not* the same as slurs.

- While in the **Insert** mode, hit the “V” key or press a **Tie** button in the “Notes” palette.
- Click on the notehead of the first note of a tied pair to insert the tie with a downward arc.
- Right-click (**option + click** for *Mac*) to insert a tie with upward arc.
- To delete a tie, hit the “X” key with a tie showing on the cursor and click the first note of the pair to delete.

## 7.6.1i Accidentals

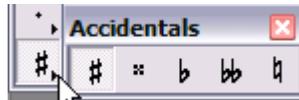


FIGURE 5 - 8: Accidentals (in Notes palette)

*To insert an accidental,*

- Select any accidental from the expanding accidental button located in the “Notes” palette.
- Toggle the “C” key to activate **Insert** mode.
- Click on the notehead that is to receive the marking.

*To change an accidental,*

- Select an accidental from the “Notes” palette. Click on a note with an accidental. It will change to the selected accidental.

*To delete an accidental,*

- Quick-select** (Ctrl + click) any accidental, press the “X” key and click on a notehead to remove its associated accidental.

## 7.6.1j Courtesy accidental tool

A courtesy accidental is bounded by parentheses and acts as a reminder that a note has an accidental.

*To insert a courtesy accidental,*

Press the parentheses button when any accidental is selected before clicking a notehead.

## 7.6.2 Articulations palette

Articulations affect the playback of selected notes. These include slurs, turns, fermatas, mordents, trills, accents and tremolos.

### 7.6.2a Slur (Legato)

Note durations associated with slurs are increased about 10% giving an overlapping or “connected” effect when played back.

To insert a legato (*slur*),

- Push the **Legato** button in the “Articulations” palette.
- Drag to select range of notes to be associated with the legato. Dragging downward places the legato above notes. Dragging upward positions legato under the notes.
- Inserting Slurs and Tuplets (Detail)

Inserting and deleting slurs and ties are very similar. While in the **Insert** mode, select a triplet (“**T**” key) from the “Notes” palette or select Legato from the “Articulations” palette.

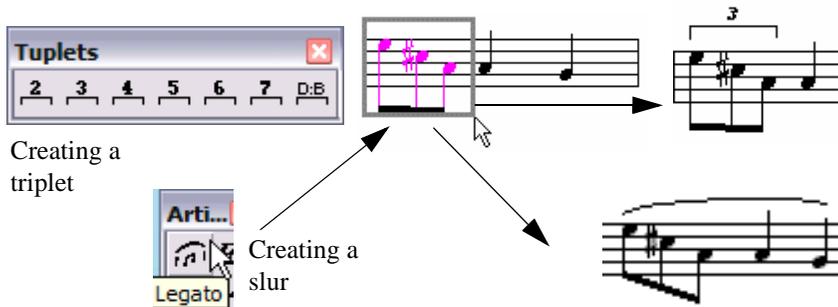


FIGURE 7 - 1: Creating a Triplet or Slur (legato)

- Click and drag down to insert the triplet or legato above the notes to be selected.
- Click and drag up to insert the triplet or legato below the notes to be selected.

*To insert expression marks,*

Many common expression marks can be inserted as text with the use of Expression tool. Available phrases can be found in English, Italian, French, German with English translation.



FIGURE 7 - 2: Expression Tool

- a. Select the **EXP** (Expression) button.
- b. Choose a language and an expression from the pull down menu or type your own expression in the text field. Press OK.
- c. Position the cursor anywhere in the active staff.

NOTE: Expressions are simple text and have no affect on playback.

### **7.6.2b Turns, fermatas, accents and mordents (ornaments)**

*To insert turns, fermatas, accents, trills and mordents,*

*Ornaments can be inserted above or below notes by clicking the top of a notehead or near the tip of note stem.*

- a. Select the articulation.
- b. Click on a note head to insert the articulation above the note head.
- c. Click on a note stem to insert the articulation at the tip of the stem.

*To delete a turn, fermata, accent or mordent,*

- **Quick-select** the articulation. Or use “**O**” key to select. Press the “**X**” key and click on the notehead or stem of the associated note.
- Trill

With **tr** (trill) selected, click on a note to insert a single trill marking. To create an “extended” trill, hold the **Shift** button down (**Nudge** mode) and drag the yellow control handle on the trill marking to the right.

To insert a trill,

- With **tr** (trill) selected, click on a note to insert a single trill.



FIGURE 11 - 8: Trill and Extended Trill

To create an “extended” trill,

- Trills have a control handle to the right of the “r”. In Nudge mode, dragging the control handle to the right will extend the trill’s effect to all notes in the same staff below the extension.



FIGURE 7 - 1: Extended Trill

- Turn

Click on note head or note stem apply a turn. Turns play as follows:



FIGURE 8 - 1: Turn

- Fermata (bird’s eye)

Click on note head or note stem to apply a fermata. Tempo is slowed by 50% for the duration of the note to which the fermata is attached.

- Staccatos

Click on note head to apply a staccato. Duration of the associated note is shortened by 25%.

- Tenuto

Click on note head to apply a tenuto. Duration of the associated note is extended by 125%.

- Accent

Click on note head to apply an accent. Accent increases the velocity of its associated note by 150%.

- Soft Accent

Click on note head to apply a soft accent. Soft accent increases the velocity of its associated note by 125%.

- Sharp, Flat and Natural

With one of these modifiers selected, clicking on a trill marking will insert the accidental above the trill and cause playback of the trill to “flatten”, “sharpen” or “neutralize” target pitches while considering the active key signature.

- Mordent

Click on notehead to apply a mordent. Mordents play back as follows:



FIGURE 11 - 2: Mordent

- Inverted Mordent

Inverted mordent play back as follows:



FIGURE 11 - 3: Inverted Mordent

### 7.6.2c Tremolo (single, double, triple, quadruple)

Tremolos repeat the note affected by dividing the associated note by four times the selected tremolo value.

*To insert a tremolo,*

- Select a tremolo from the Tremolo button of the “Articulations” palette. Available tremolos are single, double, triple or quadruple (Both single or beamed tremolos).



FIGURE 7 - 1: Tremolos (Articulations palette)

- b. Click on the head of the note to apply the tremolo value.
- c. Adjacent half notes will join to become beam tremolos when the first half note is clicked with beam tremolo selected.

NOTE: Beam tremolos will playback only if the applied “half-beam” notes are positioned in measures as if they were quarter notes.

*To change existing half notes to beamed tremolos,*

- With a beam tremolo value selected, click on the first of two adjacent half notes. The notes will beam with tremolo mark inside.

### 7.6.2d Arpeggio

Arpeggiated chords will offset the start time of all members of a cluster and will keep them sustained throughout the duration of the chord.

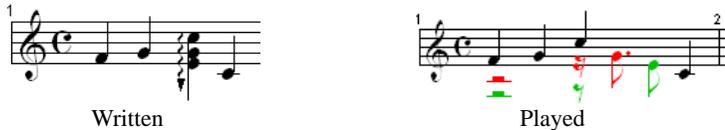


FIGURE 11 - 8: Arpeggio

*To insert an arpeggio,*

- a. Select the **Arpeggio** button (squiggly line) from the palette.
- b. Click and drag the mouse to select a chord cluster (can include more than one voice).
- c. Dragging the mouse in an upward direction will cause the notes to arpeggiate in an upward scale.
- d. Dragging the mouse in the downward direction will cause the notes to arpeggiate in a downward scale. A down arrow is added.

*To insert a glissando,*

- a. Select the **Glissando** button (two notes connected with a line) from the palette.
- b. Clicking on any single (non-chord cluster) note will insert a glissando to the following note belonging to the same voice. During playback, the *glissando* will be heard.

To delete any articulation associated with a note,

- **Quick-select** the articulation. Press the “**X**” key, and click on the note associated with the articulation.

NOTE: To delete any articulation that is not note-specific, use the Select tool (“**O**” key) to highlight it and hit the **Delete** key.

### 7.6.2e Inserting or Deleting Multiple Articulations

Any articulation can be applied to multiple notes at one time.

To assign an articulation to many notes at once,

- Use the Select tool (“**O**” key) then drag to select a range of notes.
- Select the articulation to be applied to all highlighted notes and insert it to any note.

To delete all articulation marks and slurs in a selected area,

- Use the Select tool (“**O**” key) to drag a box around the area from which you wish to remove articulations.
- Once the area is selected, hit the “**G**” key to delete all articulations in the selected region.

### 7.6.2f Glissando

Glissandos connect two adjacent notes into equal steps totaling the combined value of the connecting notes.



Written



Played

FIGURE 11 - 9: Glissando)

NOTE: Although it is part of the glissando, the last note always sounds its full value.

### 7.6.3 Dynamics Palette



Inserting dynamic markings, *crescendo* & *decrescendo* markings or hairpins will alter the velocity of selected notes in the *active staffline*.

To apply dynamics and/or dynamic markings to more than one staff, enter the dynamic in each active staff that you wish to apply the effect. If you do not wish to have so many dynamics visible in every staffline, you may enter symbols in the *Hidden Symbols* mode. For more details, see "Hidden Symbols", Section 7.10, on page 152.

#### 7.6.3a Crescendos and Decrescendos (Hairpin Tool)

To insert a hairpin,

- Select a dynamic hairpin from the “Dynamics” palette or hit **Shift** + “,” for crescendo hairpin and **Shift** + “.,” for decrescendo.

**NOTE:** If a similar hairpin is nearby, *Quick-select* it by holding down the “Ctrl” key and clicking on it. The cursor will become that mark.

- Click and drag to select notes for which a hairpin is to be applied.
- Dragging downward will insert the hairpin above the active staff. Dragging upwards will insert the hairpin below the active staff.



FIGURE 7 - 1: Hairpin crescendo (drag upwards)

To use keyboard shortcuts for entering hairpins (*P*, *<* and *>*)

- Press the “**P**” key to select *p* (piano) dynamic marking and open the “Dynamics” palette.
- Hold down “**Shift**” + “,” to select the crescendo hairpin.
- Hold down “**Shift**” + “.,” to select the decrescendo hairpin.

To insert a crescendo or decrescendo mark,

- Select **Cresc.** or **Decresc.** from the “Dynamics” tool palette. Or, if the mark you want is nearby, *Quick-select* it by holding down the “Ctrl” key and clicking on the marking you want. The cursor will become that mark.
- In Insert mode, click and drag the mouse to highlight the range of notes over which you wish to apply the dynamic change.



FIGURE 7 - 2: Inserting a crescendo marking

- Dragging downward while selecting the range of notes will insert the marking above the staffline. Dragging upward will insert the marking below the staffline.
- To change the range of **cresc.** / **decres.** markings, hold the Shift button down (**Nudge** mode) and drag the yellow control handle horizontally. Notes to be affected by the mark will highlight in a light grey color.

NOTE: Playback properties of articulations and dynamics may be changed using the Properties tool. See "Playback Properties", Section 4.9, on page 54.

### 7.6.3b Dynamic Markings

To Insert a Dynamic marking,

- While in the **Insert** mode, select a dynamic marking from the “Dynamics” palette.
- Click anywhere above the active staff. A change in playback volume (MIDI Volume) for that particular active staff (MIDI track) then will apply.
- Changes in note volumes range as follows:  
 $pppp = 30 / ppp = 40 / pp = 50 / p = 60 / mp = 70 / mf = 80 / f = 90 / ff = 100 / fff = 110 / ffff = 120.$

NOTE: Dynamics apply only to the active staffline. To apply dynamics and/or dynamic markings to more than one staff, enter the dynamic in each part in which you want the effect to apply. If you do not wish to have multiple dynamics visible, you may enter dynamics in the Hidden Symbols mode. For more details see "Hidden Symbols", Section 7.10, on page 152.

To delete a dynamic or tempo marking,

An alternative is to use the Select tool (“O” key), highlight the mark and hit Delete.

### 7.6.4 Tempo Palette

Default tempo for all time signatures is 120 beats per minute (120 bpm) except for “cut-time” and 2/2 time, which play at 60 beats per minute. Tempos can be modified by inserting one or more metronome marks, by inserting a tempo marking or with the ENF Tempo Controller.

#### 7.6.4a Metronome Mark

NOTE: The default tempo of all ENF scores is 120 beats per minute (BPM). Any tempo marking (whether recognized or inserted) will over-ride the default tempo. Default tempo can be reset by clicking the *Default Tempo* button in the **Playback Console** or from **Default Tempo** under the **Edit** menu.

To insert a metronome mark or change-of-tempo marking,

- Select the metronome mark button in the “Tempo” palette or select a custom tempo by pushing the **Metronome Mark** button at the bottom of the palette.
- If using a metronome mark, select a new tempo and baseline note value. Preset tempo markings ranges from 30 bpm (*Lento*) to 240 bpm (*Prestissimo*).

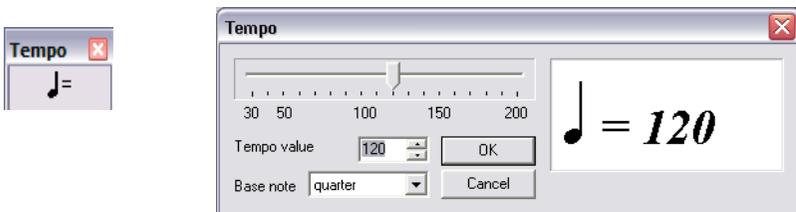


FIGURE 7 - 3: Tempo Change (Metronome Mark) window

- In Insert mode, click anywhere above the topmost staff of a system to insert mark. Tempo will adjust accordingly at that point.

## 7.6.5 Tempo Markings

Tempo Markings are found in the “Tempo” palette. Clicking anywhere inside a staffline will insert the selected Tempo Marking above the staff. Tempo will be altered at that point.



FIGURE 7 - 4: Selecting Tempo Markings from Tempo palette

**NOTE:** **Expression markings**, found in the “Articulations” palette, are merely descriptors and will not alter playback.

*To edit a metronome or change-of-tempo mark in the score,*



- a. Select the **Properties** tool from the Toolbar.
- b. Click on a mark in the score to edit its properties.

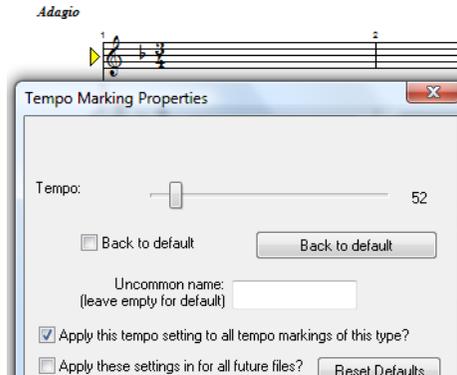


FIGURE 7 - 5: Tempo Marking Properties window

- 7.6.6 Using the horizontal slider, select a new tempo for the mark. Choose whether to apply the change to just the single mark, all similar marks or permanently apply the change for that mark.

## 7.6.7 Change of tempo (metronome mark)

Creating a change-of-tempo is accomplished by inserting a metronome mark above the staff line where you want the tempo to change.

### 7.6.8 Metronome mark

The Metronome tool in the “Tempo” palette (also activated in **Edit > Default Tempo**) sets the tempo at the point the mark is inserted.

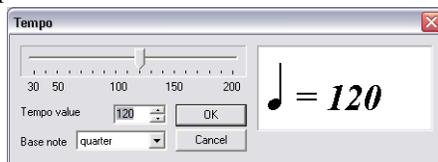


FIGURE 7 - 6: Setting Default Tempo

### 7.6.9 Ritards, Accelerandos, Descelerandos

Select the appropriate symbol and enter it by dragging the mouse over the range of notes you wish to apply the effect to. Use the Properties tool to modify the tempo change over the range of notes to which it applies.

NOTE: To view the selected range of accelerando/descelerando, push the **Hidden Objects** button. Range is shown with dotted line.

### 7.6.10 Tempo controller



Another method to change tempos is to use the Tempo Controller.

*To activate the interactive Tempo Controller,*

- Push the Tempo Controller button in the ENF Toolbar. Clicking the orange line changes the default tempo value. For more details, see "ENF Graphical controllers", Section 4.11, on page 63

### 7.6.11 Clefs and Signatures (Key and Time) palette

*To insert a key or clef signature,*



- a. Hold either the “Treble clef” button or “4/4” button down for a few seconds and select the appropriate key or time signature from the palette.
- b. Click at **the beginning** of the staff (or part) to which it applies.

NOTE: Key signatures for that part will automatically update in all subsequent systems up to, but not including, any change-of-key signature should any occur. Clefs signs are not automatically updated but can be cloned using the “Unify” command.

7.6.11a For time signatures, see "Unify Time Signatures", Section 7.8.4b, on

- 7.6.11b For key signatures, see "Unify Key Signatures", Section 7.8.4a, on page 145

*To change an existing key or time signature to another signature,*

Entering or changing any time signature automatically updates time signatures in all parts of all systems; up to the first change-of-time signature if one exists. Entering or changing key signatures must be done one staff at a time.

- Quick-select** (Ctrl+click) a desired key or time signature nearby or select a new signature from the tool palette.
- Click on a highlighted signature to be changed.

NOTE: The key of C major (A minor) does not have a visible sign to indicate its presence. If no key signature is visible in the first measure of the ENF display, the key signature will be C major (A minor) by default.

*To create a custom time signature to Insert or Change,*



- Select the **Custom Time** button from the "Signatures" palette
- Using numeric scrollers, select a new **numerator** (beats per measure) and a new **denominator** (note value receiving the beat).
- Click to insert signature immediately following any barline.

*To insert a new key or time signature in the body of a score,*

- With a time or key signature selected from the "Signatures" palette, **Insert** mode, click to the right of any barline.

NOTE: The score will be parsed from the insertion point. Error measures likely disappear after correcting the new time signature.

*To insert a new key or time signature at the end of a system:*

According to the conventions of music notation, a change-of-key or a change-of-time signature that begins on a new line should also be indicated to the right of a barline at the end of the previous system.



FIGURE 7 - 7: Time Signature at the end of a system

*To delete a signature*

- **Quick-Select** a key or time signature. Hit the “**X**” key and click on the signature to delete it.
  - To prevent the last measure from rolling to the next line, avoid deleting the final barline of any system.
  - a. Note positions do not move when a clef sign is changed. To change a clef while keeping original note pitches of a part or selected region, note positions must be shifted. Refer "Transposition by Key and Clef", Section 5.4.
  - a. Select a clef from the Clefs palette.

NOTE: Left-click and hold on any palette button with a small arrow for 2 seconds to expand it and reveal all symbols of that class.
  - b. Click anywhere in the active staff to insert the selected clef.

#### **7.6.11c Alto / Tenor / Mezzo-soprano (“C”) clefs**

The midpoint of the “C” clef indicates where C below middle C (MIDI C3) is to be located.

#### **7.6.11d Treble Octava / Bass Octava clefs**

Playback in these clefs will be an octave higher than with a standard clef.

#### **7.6.11e Treble Octavo / Bass Octavo clefs**

Playback in these clefs will be an octave lower than with a standard clef.

#### **7.6.11f Percussion clef**

When the Percussion clef is inserted into a staff line, MIDI channel assignment of the staff switches to 10; the default drum channel. Notes are entered normally, but playback as MIDI drums. Note pitch-to-MIDI drum assignments are mapped in **Drumset** option under the **Playback** menu.

#### **7.6.11g Octava / Octavo tools**

These are not clefs per se. Rather than insert with a mouse click, they are applied to selected notes by dragging to select the notes to be modified. Playback of selected notes will be an octave higher when selecting with **Octava** tool and an octave lower when selecting with **Octavo** tool.

*To assign Octava or Octavo to a range of selected notes*

- a. Select either **Octava** or **Octavo** tool.



## 7.6.13 Text and tools palette

### 7.6.13a Text

Selecting the Text button sets the cursor to the Text Edit mode. See *"Text mode"*, Section 8.2, on page 164.

### 7.6.13b Lyrics

Selecting the Lyric button sets the cursor to the Lyric Edit mode. See *"Lyrics"*, Section 8.1, on page 162.

### 7.6.13c Guitar Fretboard

Selecting the Guitar chord fretboard button activate the "Insert Guitar Chord" cursor. For details, see "Guitar Fret and Chord Symbols", Section 8.3.1, on page 166.

- Rehearsal

Ten Rehearsal Markings can be placed anywhere in the ENF view.

- Pedals

Four Pedal Markings can be placed anywhere in the ENF view.

- Bowings

Two Bowing Markings can be placed anywhere in the ENF view.

- Breaths

A Breath Marking can be placed anywhere in the ENF view.

## 7.7 Keyboard Shortcuts

### 7.7.1 Unify (U)

See "Unify (U)", Section 7.7.1, on page 141 or "Unify Score ("U")", Section 7.8.4, on page 144

### 7.7.2 Dots (D)

Hit the "D" key. This toggles between **Insert** a dot and **Delete** a dot modes. Notice how the cursor alternates between a solid insert dot and grayed-out delete dot.

Any note or rest may be selected with dots of prolongation assigned to it. Select a note or rest from the appropriate palette, then click on the single or double-dot button inside the palette. In **Insert** mode, the new note/rest will have a dot.



### 7.7.3 Ties (V)

Hit the “**V**” key. This toggles you between the solid **Insert** tie and grayed-out **Delete** tie modes. To tie two contiguous notes of the same pitch, click on the first note. The “**V**” tie tool will also insert multiple ties from one chord cluster to the next as long as note pitches match.

NOTE: To over-ride default arc direction, insert ties with a right-click (**option + click** for *Mac*). Inserted ties will have reversed arc directions.

To insert only one tie at a time, select the **single tie** button from the “Notes” palette.

### 7.7.4 Beam direction (A)

With any single flagged note chosen, hit the “**A**” key. This toggles between Left beam, Middle beam and Right beam directions.

### 7.7.5 Stem direction (S)

The “**S**” key changes the default note stem direction. When inserting a note, toggling the “**S**” key reverses the stem direction of an inserted note.

Default stem direction of an inserted note is determined by its vertical position on the staff. Stem direction of inserted notes automatically changes when the cursor crosses the middle line of any staff.

*To place a note with a stem in the opposite direction of the cursor,*

- Hit the “**S**” key to flip the stem on the cursor. Or right-click while inserting a note (**option + click** for *Mac*).

*To change the stem direction of an existing note,*

- In Insert mode, right-click on any given notehead (**option + click** for *Mac*). The stem direction of the note will become flipped.

NOTE: In general, Voice #1 should have *stems up* and Voice #2 should have *stems down*.

*To change the stem direction of several notes at once,*

- a. Hit the “**O**” key to activate the Select tool.
- b. Click and drag a box around any series of notes.
- c. Press the “**S**” key to reverse the stem direction of the highlighted notes.

*To change the stem direction of ALL notes in the document,*

- a. Select Ctrl+A (Select all in document).
- b. Press the “**S**” key to reverse the stem direction of every note with a stem.

## 7.7.6 Voice Splitting (Select + “H”)

To split two-note clusters into two independent voices,



- Hit the “O” key or **Select** button to activate the Select tool.
- Select Ctrl+A (Select all) to highlight all symbols in the document.
- Press the “H” key. This will separate two-note clusters into 2 voices.



FIGURE 7 - 1: Splitting two-note chords into 2 voices



**TIP:** Only two note clusters will split. If you wish to split clusters containing three or more notes, delete the least desirable note(s) from the cluster (“Z” key and “X” key) until you are left with two notes in each cluster.

**NOTE:** You can select multiple clusters on the page using the Selector Tool or using “Select All” (Ctrl + A or Edit > Select All).

## 7.7.7 Part Linking (Ctrl+L)

- Mis-matched parts can be properly reassigned with Part Linking. In addition, “orphan” staff lines can be reconnected to their proper system using this tool. With your cursor positioned over the system of interest, press **Ctrl+L** (Win) / **Cmd+L** (Mac). An alternative method is to select the Properties Tool and right-click (**alt** / **option** for Mac) over any staffline in a system that requires re-linking and select “**Part Linking**”. This will open the **Re-link Parts** window.

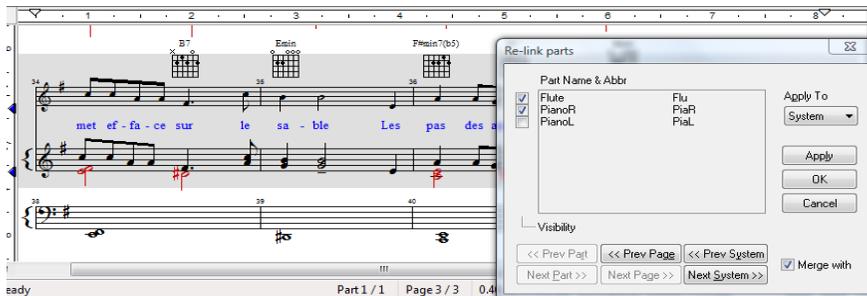


FIGURE 7 - 2: Re-link Parts window

## 7.8 Navigator

### 7.8.1 Open (Ctrl+O / (Cmd+M Mac)



Push to open / import a file compatible with SmartScore. Select SmartScore (ENF), Image (TIFF, BMP, PCX), XML or MIDI file from “Files of Type” pull-down menu. Same as **File > Open**.

### 7.8.2 Scan



Push to initiate scanning. Same as **File > Scan Music > Acquire**.

### 7.8.3 Recognition



Push to initiate recognition on any pre-scanned image. Same as **File > Recognize**.

### 7.8.4 Unify Score (“U”)



Unify updates key and time signatures, clef signs and staff spacing throughout the score based on choices made in the dialog window.

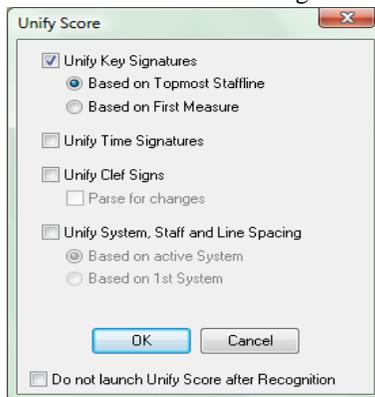


FIGURE 7 - 3: Unify Key, Time and Clefs



**TIP:** Check part linking (**Ctrl + L**) before applying Unify when editing optimized scores.

If your ENF score contains collapsing and expanding systems, it is recommended to perform Part Linking before Unifying. Unifying signatures and clefs will maintain part linkages as set in Logical Part Linking. Refer to "Re-linking parts", Section 4.14 for more details.

### **7.8.4a Unify Key Signatures**

- Based on topmost staffline. (Default)

All key signatures for every part are updated based on signatures found in the first staffline of each system. Any change-of-key signs found in the topmost staffline will update subsequent stafflines within each system. Use when systems have the same key signature in each part.

- Based on 1st system.

All key signatures in every system are updated based on signatures found in the first system on the first page. Any subsequent changes in key signatures will be removed. Use to unify scores that have transposed instruments with a fixed number of parts per system.

NOTE: Manually edit key signatures when scores contain:

- a) Transposed instruments AND change-of-key signatures
- b) Transposed instruments AND have optimized systems.

### **7.8.4b Unify Time Signatures**

All time signatures are updated based on signatures found in the first system on the first page. Change-of-time signatures are removed in any subsequent systems. Use when no change-of-time signatures occur.

### **7.8.4c Unify Clefs**

All clef signs are updated based on clefs found in the first measure of the each system. Any change-of-clef found inside systems are removed. Use if many false change-of-clefs were recognized or if very few change-of-clef signs are found in the original.

- Parse every measure (Default)

Clefs are updated on a line-by-line basis. Change-of-clefs encountered updates each staffline until another change-of-clef is encountered. Use when many change of clefs are written into the original score.

### **7.8.4d Unify System, Staff and Line Spacing**

Distances between systems, staves and line will be universally applied throughout the score based on:

- the active system (default)
- the first system of the score

### 7.8.4e Do not launch Unify after recognition

Select the option if you choose not to have Unify open automatically after recognition is completed.



### 7.8.5 Setup

Opens Page Setup environment for page printing alignment & margins. For more details on Page Setup, see "Custom document layouts", Section 6.3.5, on page 96.



### 7.8.6 Print Preview

Use to check for proper page layouts. Also seen in Page Setup view.

### 7.8.7 Score



Push to create ENF score from scratch. Choose ENF score template from "System Type in Score" pull-down menu. Same as **File > New > New ENF**. To copy regions or pages of an existing ENF document to a new one, see "Copying a SmartScore page for pasting into other programs", Section 5.7.2, on page 88.



### 7.8.8 Record

Push **Record** button to initiate MIDI Recording. All open ENF documents are closed when MIDI recording is launched. A MIDI Piano Roll view opens with Track 1 staged for MIDI recording through an external MIDI device. Identical to **Real-time > Record** in **MIDI View**.



### 7.8.9 Karaoke View

Push to enter Karaoke playback environment.



### 7.8.10 MIDI View (Ctrl + I / Cmnd + I for Mac)



Push **MIDI** button to view score in MIDI environment. Use also to change from one MIDI view to another; e.g. to change from Overview to Piano Roll view. Choose Overview or Piano Roll or Event List for a selected Part. Same as **View > New MIDI View**. ENF view remains open until or unless recording is initiated. To revert back to ENF view, close the open MIDI view.



### 7.8.11 Tiling

Viewing several displays of your score can be extremely useful. It is possible to view several MIDI and ENF views simultaneously.



- Push **Tile** button to display all open TIF/ENF views along with any open *MIDI Overview*, *Piano Roll* or *Event List* views. This is identical to selecting the **Window > Tile** menu.

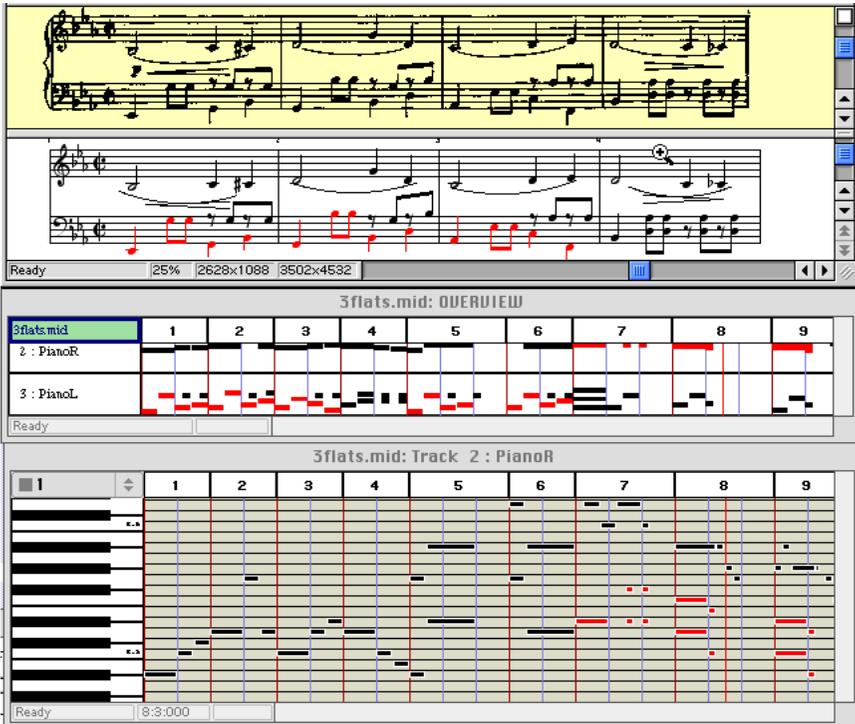


FIGURE 7 - 4: Tiled view (typical)



## 7.8.12 CD Burn

Push this button to create a .WAV file of the ENF playback and/or burn to CD.

NOTE: DVD-Audio write devices must be located on the system. Some external devices may not be discoverable. In these cases, create the .WAV file and then use CD / DVD-R or CD / DVD audio burn software.

### 7.8.13 Auto-Beaming



With **Auto-Beam** selected, beamed notes will automatically form into common groups based on the active time signature and standard notation beaming rules. **Auto-Beam** defaults to “off” after recognition.



- To automatically insert and edit beams into preformed groups.
- Push **Auto-Beam** button in the Toolbar
- Select a note value from the Notes palette.
- With any beam tool selected, clicking from left-to-right, will create beamed groups into pre-determined sets.

### 7.8.14 Auto-Spacing



With the **Auto-Space** button selected, notes and rests will insert proportional to their relative value within a measure. After recognition, **Auto-Space** defaults to “off.”

## 7.9 Working with Contrapuntal Voices

Each staff line has the potential of containing up to four contrapuntal voices. Contrapuntal voices are organized into “threads” (voicelines). See "Voices and Playback", Section 4.5, on page 45 for more about how voices affect playback.



*To view contrapuntal voices as separate colors,*

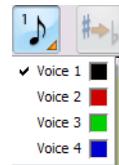
- Push the **Voice Visibility** button in the Toolbar.

### 7.9.1 Voice color

Contrapuntal voices display as one of four possible colors (Voice 1 = black, Voice 2 = red, Voice 3 = green and Voice 4 = blue). Normally, you will see black (Voice 1) and red (Voice 2).

### 7.9.2 Overriding voice color assignments

Voice color/number assignments can be changed manually.



*To override default voice color of a note or rest (change voice number),*

- a. Select desired voice number (and color) from **Voice Tool** combo button in the Toolbar.
- b. Locate the note or rest for which you want to change voice color.

- c. Click on a note or rest to change it to the selected color and voice.

Voice color is automatically determined based on several factors (number of voices, stem direction, number of beats, vertical alignment, etc.) You can override voice colors manually. Changing voice color may change voice colors of other notes in a given measure.

**NOTE:** Do not override voice colors until a measure is entirely edited. Unusual color combinations usually correct themselves automatically after a measure is corrected.

*To vertically align offset voices,*



- a. Use the Select tool (“O”) to highlight offset notes and/or rests.
- b. Press the “Y” key to group the selected, offset notes into a single vertical event. Selected voices will move slightly.



**Offset voices not “glued” following recognition. (half-note appears in black)**



**Using the Select tool (Esc key) to highlight the two offset voices.**



**Hitting the “Y” key glues offset voices to one time event. “Y” also unglues joined voices.**

**FIGURE 7 - 5:** Correcting offset voices not “glued” after recognition.

Similarly, if you see notes bunched together each displaying different colors (usually black and red and sometimes green), but which actually belong to only one voice, they are probably “glued” to the same vertical event. Joined notes can be “unglued” as follows:

*To “Unglue” offset notes not intended to play simultaneously,*

- a. With the Select tool (“O” key), carefully select the incorrectly glued notes (**NOTE:** they will each have different colors). Be sure to select only the notes which are incorrectly joined.
- b. Hit the “Y” key. Joined notes will separate and change color.

### 7.9.3 Checking vertical alignment of voices

Measures with notes and rests that are incorrectly aligned will become highlighted reddish (“error”). In addition, all notes and rests that are glued will move together when dragged left or right in **Nudge mode**.

- Hold the **Shift** button. Click and drag note control point to verify.

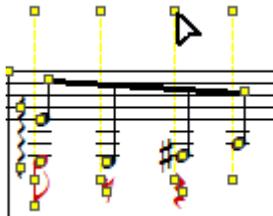


FIGURE 7 - 6: Using Nudge mode (**SHIFT**) to check vertical alignments

### 7.9.4 Swap position of note heads (Select + “L”)

Occasionally, you will want to swap the horizontal positions of a pair of joined offset notes. This can easily be done by selecting a vertically aligned pair with the Select Tool (“O”) and hitting the “L” key. The relative positions of these joined notes will be swapped without altering voice color or playback.



Note heads  
before swap

Note heads  
after swap

FIGURE 7 - 7: Note head swapping

### 7.9.5 Cross-staff voicing

Occasionally, notes of one voice may “visit” an adjacent staff. Technically, visiting notes belong to their “home” staff, but they obtain their **pitch** information from the visiting staff line.

*To create cross-staff voicing,*

- Make sure the note to be moved across staff lines has its stem in the correct orientation (**Select** + “**S**” to change stem direction). Hold the **Shift** key down and **drag** the note-head to the desired pitch of an adjacent staff. If cross-staff notes belong to a beamed

group and the beam does not interfere with the movement of the notehead, simply hold the **Shift** button down and drag the notehead into the adjacent staff to its desired pitch.



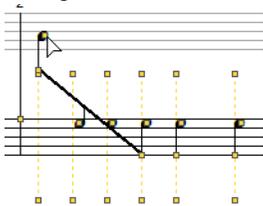
FIGURE 7 - 8: Cross-staff voicing

- Notes positioned in a “visiting” staff still belong to the “home” staff. To edit or move a note positioned in an adjacent “visiting” staff, press the Caps Lock key while the “home” staff is active. Press Caps Lock again to unlock the active home staff.

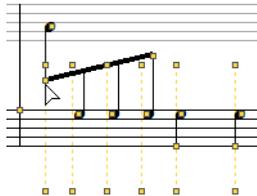
NOTE: Cross-staff indicator lines can be either solid or dotted. These attributes can be changed in **Edit > Program Preferences > Systems > Cross-staff voicing line style**.

*To control cross-staff beams (beam collisions and flipped stems)*

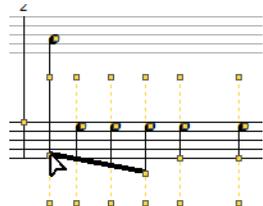
- If a beam collides with note stems or appears at odd angles after moving notes, hold **Shift** down (Nudge) then click & drag the control point on either beam end. Drag beam end until it is properly positioned. Stems of notes alternate as the beam angle is changed.



Beam colliding with note stems.



Drag beam control point to alter stem orientation



Drag beam control point to change beam angle

FIGURE 7 - 9: Controlling cross-staff beams

### 7.9.6 Cross-measure beaming

*To create a cross-measure beam,*



- Insert a flagged note on either side of a barline.
- Use the **Select tool** to highlight both notes and hit the “**B**” key.

## 7.9.7 Overlapping or offset noteheads

Two notes in different voices can share the same pitch at the same time. You can choose whether note heads of different voices should overlap one another or become horizontally offset.

To allow offset note heads,

- Check off “**Overlap Notes**” in **Edit > Document Preferences > Score Symbols > Overlap mode**. Playback will not be affected whether note heads are offset or overlap.

## 7.10 Hidden Symbols



You can insert any symbol and have it hidden from normal view as well as keeping it from being printed. You may need to add a extra rests for correct playback, but you don't want them all to be visible. Another example would be “implied” triplets... you may want to show only the first few and “hide” the rest. Hidden Symbols will also display the **range** of certain symbols such as **8va**, **8vb**, **ritard**, **accelerando** or **descelerando**. Holding the SHIFT button down will also display effective ranges for these symbols (see “Pitch shift (Nudge mode)”, Section 5.2.1, on page 77)

To insert a hidden notation object,

- Push the **Hide/Show Symbol** button in the Toolbar. Insert any notation object normally. Symbols entered in Hidden Symbols will appear as a lighter color than when entered normally.

In the following example, the measure in question has only 1 beat written into the upper part and 2 beats written in the lower part. Inserting 2 hidden rests in the upper and one hidden rest in the lower corrects error.

Recognized measure  
(w/ cross-staff voice)

Corrected measure  
(w/ rests placed in Hidden mode)

To view ranges of dynamics and tempos,

- a. Push the Hide/Show Symbol button. Dynamics or tempos which were applied to a range of notes will appear as follows:



FIGURE 7 - 10: Hidden range of an accelerando

Push again to exit Hidden Symbols mode. “Hidden” symbols do not appear in normal mode and will not print.

## 7.11 More ENF navigating

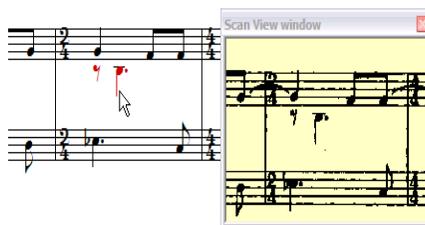
### 7.11.1 Split-screen and scan view reference views

Both the ENF view (white) and the image reference view (yellow) appear in “split screen” format immediately following recognition. Alternative reference views include a floating “Scan view window” and “Overlay with fader” feature (Mac only).

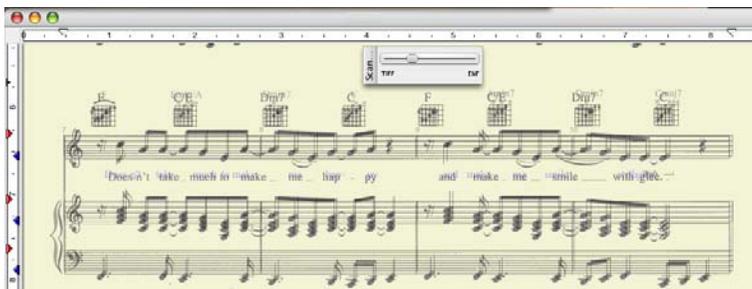
NOTE: After reformatting a system, page or score, the floating scan view window will automatically open.



Default Split Screen



Floating Scan View window



TIFF / ENF Transparency Overlay (Mac only)

FIGURE 7 - 1: Scan Reference Views

*To choose an alternative reference view,*

- a. Go to **View > Split Screen** and select an alternative reference view option.

Mac Only: Try the TIFF / ENF transparency overlay with fader.

*To view a variable ENF transparency over the TIFF pane,*

- a. Go to **View** menu and select “**Split Screen > Overlay**”.
- b. Use the variable transparency fader to the right of the Toolbar to adjust the opaqueness of the top ENF pane.

*To activate the floating Scan View window,*

- a. Go to **View** menu, select “**Scan View Window**”.
- b. To increase or decrease zoom view of the window, choose either **Zoom 25%** or **Zoom 50%** from the **View > Scan View** window.

### 7.11.2 Scrolling

Use the scroll bar and up/down arrows to the right of the ENF window. You may also use the arrow keys located on your computer keyboard to scroll up, down, left, and right in an ENF document.

### 7.11.3 Paging

*To page forward or backward in an ENF document,*



Use the “Next page” / “Previous page” buttons located in the Toolbar or push the double paging arrows at the lower right-hand corner of the SmartScore window.

### 7.11.4 Jump To Page: (Ctrl +G or Cmnd+G for Mac)

While editing, you can go to any page or measure in ENF file.

*To open the GoTo... window*

- a. Choose the **View** menu and select **Go To... (Ctrl+G or Cmnd+G for Mac)**.

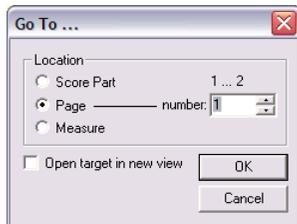


FIGURE 7 - 2: Go To window

- b. Select whether it is a Part, Page or Measure you wish to jump to.
- c. Enter the Part, Page or Measure number.

Checking the **Open Target in New View** box will open a new ENF at the targeted Part, Page or Measure. Push **OK** to jump.

## 7.12 MIDI to ENF



SmartScore accepts any Standard MIDI file and converts it to an ENF file. Since printing is disabled, SmartScore MIDI Edition does not include MIDI to ENF.

*To create an ENF document from a MIDI file,*

- a. Select **File > Open** and change the file type pull-down menu from **SmartScore Files** to **MIDI Files**. All MIDI files in the given directory will appear in the selection window. Double-click on a selected MIDI file to open.

- b. The Playback Console window will appear with a MIDI Overview representation in the background. To hear the file playback, push the **Play** button in the console.
- c. To convert the MIDI file into SmartScore notation, push the **Close** button in the Playback Console. Closing the console will begin the conversion process.

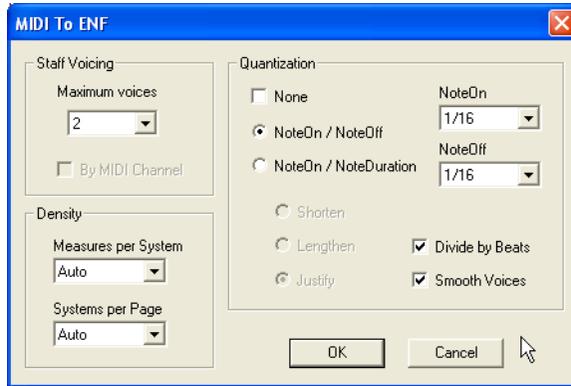


FIGURE 7 - 3: MIDI to ENF window

- **Staff Voicing**

Choose the number of contrapuntal voices you wish to see in the converted ENF file.

NOTE: It is unusual to have more than 2 voices in most music. For neatness sake, 1 or 2 voices is a good

- **Density**

- **Measures per System** determines the number of evenly spaced measures per system. Automatic is recommended.
- **Systems per Page** determines the number of evenly spaced systems per page. Automatic is recommended.

- **Quantization**

SmartScore can quantize the MIDI file that will be converted. Each note event will “snap to” the nearest beat boundary eliminating fluctuations in the timing of a MIDI performance.

MIDI files created with “free tempo” (rubato) will probably have many irregular note divisions and odd-looking timing as SmartScore attempts to “compartmentalize” notes “off-the-beat”.

- Check **None** to prevent the application of quantization.
- Use **Note On/ Note Off** to determine the smallest rhythmic values used to when spelling note start times (**Note On**) and end times (**Note Off**) in the ENF document.
- Use **Note On/ Note Duration** to determine the smallest rhythmic values used to when spelling note start times (**Note On**) and the minimum length of each note (**Note Duration**) in the ENF document.
  - Shorten each note to the last Note Duration value.
  - **Lengthen** each note to the next **Note Duration** value
  - Justify each note to the nearest Note Duration value.



*TIP:* If the resulting ENF file has many stand-alone flagged notes, try reducing the Quantization value (e.g. to 1/8th notes).

- **Divide By Beats:** When ON, resulting ENF file will interpret measure lengths by number of beats and insert change-of-time signatures if beats of each measure do not correspond to the default time signature. Turn OFF to lock default time signature.
- **Smooth Voices:** When ON, contrapuntal voices will be interpreted as continuous lines whenever practical. When OFF, contrapuntal voice will be interpreted loosely.

## 7.13 Troubleshooting ENF Problems

**Table 1: Troubleshooting ENF Problems**

Problem	Probable Cause	Fix
Notes and symbols appear as large letters.	Font association lost.	Reinstall Chopin10 font. Font is located in the SmartScore directory.
Measures outlined in a red color.	Incorrect rhythm in one or more voices.	Edit voicelines to agree with time signature.
Pickup or closeout measure highlights red & doesn't play smoothly.	Voiceline durations do not agree with the current time signature	With Properties tool selected, click on barline that begins the measure. Select " <b>As written</b> ".
Only one system highlights black at a time.	View active staffline is ON (default selection).	Check off <b>View Active Staffline</b> in View menu.
Measure remains highlighted but measure plays back smoothly.	Secondary voice may be truncated (not fully completed in the measure).	This is a common convention in music notation. May be left as is.
Can't delete an object when "X" key is pushed.	Actual object must be selected first.	"Ctrl + click" the object before deleting. Or, simply use the <b>Select</b> tool ("O" key) & drag around an object then hit <b>Delete</b> .
New note is inserted when trying to change an existing note.	Existing note was not highlighted yellow when clicked.	<b>Yellow</b> -highlighted notes will be changed to new value. <b>Blue</b> inserts new note at same time slice.
Measures unexpectedly roll from one system to another.	Barlines at the end or beginning of measures may have been deleted.	Restore the number of measures per system by opening Staff Properties with Properties tool.
Systems unexpectedly roll from one page to another.	Line, staff or system spacing may have been changed.	Readjust spacing tabs in left margin until systems are restored to page.

**Table 1: Troubleshooting ENF Problems**

Problem	Probable Cause	Fix
Staffline missing from system	Staffline cut off or during scanning or was not localized during Recognition.	Restore missing staff. See "Restoring a missed or "invisible" staff line", Section 4.13.2, on page 67
Wrong part suddenly plays.	Expanding / collapsing score; Part / instrument linking lost.	Reassign parts in system. See Section 4.14
Display shows notes as brightly colored or with green vertical lines or with a solid orange horizontal line along the staff line.	ENF display is in Hidden Objects, Tempo or Velocity controller mode.	Exit Hidden mode. See "Hidden Symbols" on page 152, "Velocity Controller" on page 64 or "Tempo Controller" on page 64.

# For Windows

## 9x / 2x / NT / ME / XP

### ENF Editor Quick Keys Map

Hold and drag note  
to change pitch

Cntl + Click = Quick-Select:  
Clicked object becomes selected  
for Insert and Change actions.

Cntl + Active System = Hold  
maintains current system as  
Active System while cursor  
moves outside system.

With CNTL	
E	Error Check
R	Paste / Replace
T	Transpose
I	New MIDI View
S	Instrument Templates
G	Go to Page
L	Part Linking
B	Bracketing
M	Master System
9	Playback Console

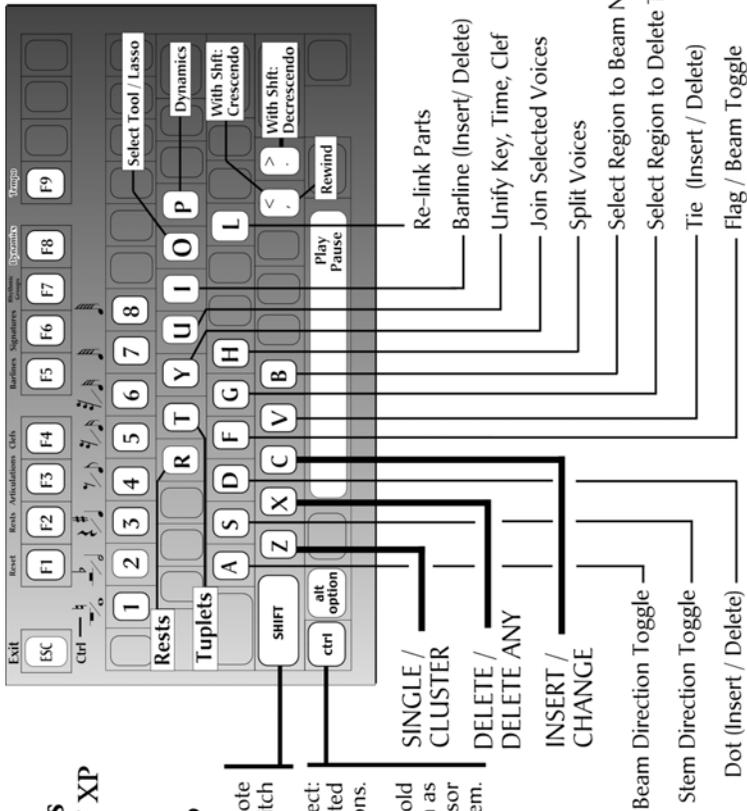


FIGURE 7 - 4: Quick Keys Map (Windows)



---

## 8) Editing Text, Lyrics & Symbols

---

 This section covers editing text, lyrics and chord symbols. SmartScore attempts to distinguish between “dumb” and “smart” text when music is recognized. Dynamic and tempo markings written as text are “smart” as are chord symbols. Annotations, rehearsal markings and fingerings are “dumb”.

### 8.1 Lyrics

A lyric “block” is a string of characters equivalent to a spoken syllable. Out of recognition, a lyric block becomes associated with a single note or rest in the staffline immediately above it. Locating the note or rest associated with a lyric block is as simple as searching directly above the center-justified lyric block. All lyric blocks within stafflines are horizontally linked and are separated from each other by dashes, underlines and/or periods.

NOTE: Text and lyrics have different colors. Text is black, lyrics are blue. Text and lyric colors are changeable.

NOTE: Lyrics sometimes appear *below* a system (e.g. some choral scores) and a special option should be selected before Recognition. See **Lyrics Under Last Staff of Systems** in "Recognition Options", Section 3.5.1, on page 25.



*TIP:* Move notes in Nudge mode (**Shift**) to verify lyric-to-note associations.

*To edit lyrics,*



- Push the “**L**” button in the Toolbar to enter Lyric mode.
- Click into a lyric block or on an associated note or rest. Once highlighted, text within the block can be edited like normal text.
- Click and drag inside a lyric block to highlight characters for editing. Use the *left arrow*, *right arrow* or *spacebar* on your keyboard to navigate within a lyric block. Once positioned, type normally.
- Characters can also be cut, copied or pasted to other lyric blocks using standard **Ctrl** + “**X**”, “**C**” and “**V**” keyboard shortcuts (**Cmd** + “**X**”, “**C**” and “**V**” for *Mac*).
- To edit a lyric block below the current line of lyrics, click into the topmost line of lyrics and use the *down arrow* key. Cursor will enter the next block in lyric line immediately below.

- f. To create a new lyric line, hit **Return** anywhere in a lyric line. A new lyric line will be created at the first note of the system.
- g. Push “**L**” again (Toolbar) to exit Lyric Edit.

*To move lyrics up or down between staves,*

- a. Hold the **Shift** key down (**Nudge** mode), locate the yellow control handle along the left-most barline of the system.
- b. Drag the control handle up or down to move entire lyric block.

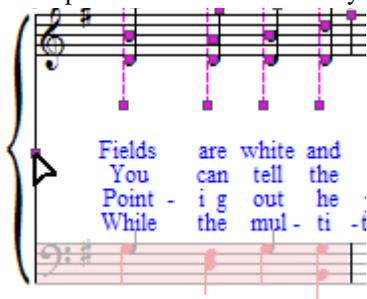


FIGURE 8 - i: Nudge mode - repositioning Lyrics



*TIP:* You may also change lyric font size. See "Adding and changing styles of Text and Lyrics", Section 8.2.2, on page 165.

### 8.1.1 Dashes, spaces and underscores

Dashes, spaces and underscores are special characters used to separate lyric blocks. Typing any of these characters will move the cursor to the next block. The **Backspace** key deletes dashes, spaces and underscores.

In the following example, the block “*der-*” was missed in recognition. The cursor was positioned at the end of the previous block. A dash was entered to create a new “syllabic” block and the correct text was then entered.



FIGURE 8 - 2: Editing Lyrics

- **Dash** = Moves the cursor to next lyric block and inserts a dash. Normally used to connect multiple syllables within a single word.

- **Space** = Moves the cursor to the next lyric block. Normally used to separate words. Does not insert a dash or an underline.
- **Underline** = Normally used as a “miasma”, an underline indicates that one vocal sound should be extended over two or more beats. Inserting creates an underline up to the next block. Entering multiple underlines will string them together over several lyric blocks.
- **Backspace** = Deletes characters inside a lyric block. Also deletes hyphens when back-spacing from one lyric block to the next.
- **Enter** = Creates a new lyric line and positions cursor in the first lyric block below beginning note or rest of the staffline.

### 8.1.2 Verifying vertically aligned voices

Nudging note heads horizontally is a good way to verify that a particular lyric block is indeed associated with a note stem. In a similar way, **Nudge** mode is useful in verifying that vertical events are properly aligned. Refer to "Checking vertical alignment of voices", Section 7.9.3 for more information.

*To verify vertical alignment of two or more voices in Nudge mode,*

Horizontally nudge the upper note (Voice #1) of a vertically aligned set of notes and/or rests. All vertically aligned (joined) notes or rests will move together.

## 8.2 Text mode

### 8.2.1 Entering and editing text

*To enter Text mode for editing or creating “dumb” text,*

- Push the “**T**” button in the Text and Controller Toolbar.



Text fields are associated with the nearest staffline. To ensure text is associated with a particular staff, move the cursor over the staff first.

- Click anywhere and begin typing.

**NOTE:** It will not be possible to do other sorts of editing other than text or lyrics in either of these modes. It will be necessary to push “**T**” or “**L**” again to exit the mode first.

*To edit a text field,*

- While in Text mode, click anywhere inside a text field.
- Drag left or right to highlight one or more characters within the field. Typing will replace the characters. Hit the **Delete** key to remove highlighted characters. Text

can also be cut, copied or pasted elsewhere using standard **Ctrl +“X”**, **“C”** and **“V”** shortcuts (**Cmnd + “X”**, **“C”** and **“V”** for Mac).

*To delete text fields,*

- a. To delete more than one text field, use the Select tool (**“O”** key) to select and highlight text in yellow. Hit the **Delete** (Del) key removes all highlighted text fields.
- b. **Quick-select** (Ctrl+click) any text field, hit the **“X”** key (cursor goes grey) and click again on any text field to remove it.

### 8.2.2 Adding and changing styles of Text and Lyrics

Out of recognition, text and lyrics are matched to the closest font type and size available. You can modify the font type, size and color of all text or lyric styles. Changing the style of the lyric block will change ALL lyrics because lyric have only one style and text fields can be assigned many different styles.

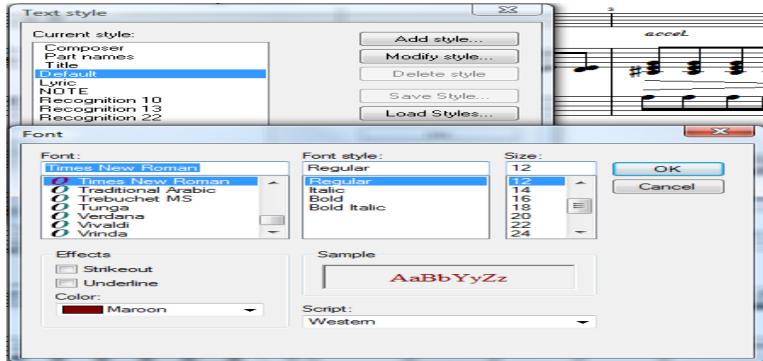


FIGURE 8 - 3: Changing Text and Lyric styles

*.To modify font styles of text fields and lyric blocks,*

- a. Push the **“T”** button to enter Text mode. Click into any text field. While the cursor is blinking, right-click (**alt/option + click** for Mac) to open the Style window.
- b. For lyrics, push the **“L”** button and click on either the associated note or rest or directly into a lyric field. Right-click to open the Style window (**alt / option + click** for Mac).

The current text style will be highlighted in the **Text Style** window.

- c. Click on the style you wish to change. Select **“Modify Style”** and enter new font characteristics and push **“OK”**.

You may also add a new style to the list for continued use later.

*To add a new style,*

- Select “Add style” and enter new font characteristics. Push “OK” and then give it a name (e.g. “Fingering”).

NOTE: The styles window is also accessible by pushing the “Text Styles” button in **File** > **Document Preferences**.

### 8.2.3 Nudging text

To nudge text,

- a. Hold the **Shift** button down to enter **Nudge** mode.
- b. Each text field has a small yellow box to its left.
- c. Click and drag the box to reposition the text field to where you want it.

*To move multiple text fields,*

- a. Use the Select Tool and drag the cursor to highlight a multiple text fields. Release the mouse button. Selected text fields will turn from yellow to green-grey.
- b. Hold the **Shift** button down to activate **Nudge** mode.

NOTE: Dragging one control box of a highlighted text field will move all selected text fields together

## 8.3 Music Symbols

### 8.3.1 Guitar Fret and Chord Symbols



Guitar fret diagrams are recognized automatically. Chord symbols written as text can be recognized and automatically converted to fret symbols when *Recognize Text Symbols as Chords* option is selected prior to scanning. See "Recognition Options", Section 3.5.1, on page 25. When transposing key signatures, fret symbols transpose and root names will automatically be updated.

### 8.3.2 Choosing a fret / chord symbol from the library,

If no chord or fret symbol was recognized, one can be selected and inserted using the Guitar Chord Library (GCL).



- a. Push the fretboard button in the Toolbar or **Ctrl + click** on any chord symbol nearby.
- b. Click above the topmost staff where you want the symbol to be inserted.

- c. The Guitar Chord Library and editor will open.

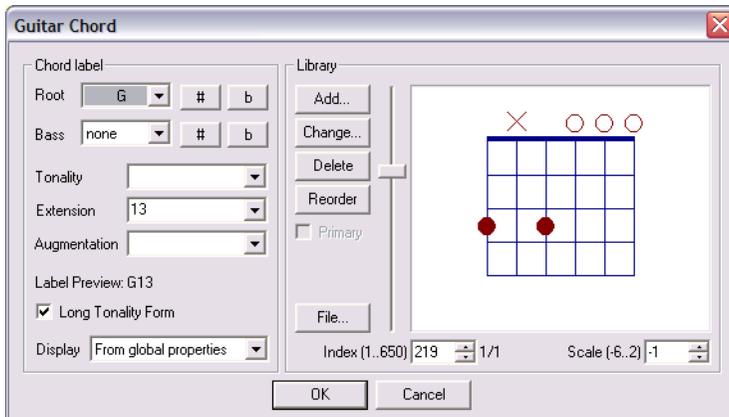


FIGURE 8 - 4: Guitar frets and chord symbols library

- d. Select a **Root** chord. Add a **Sharp, Flat, Tonality, Extension** and **Augmentation** as necessary.
- e. If the selected chord name matches one stored in the library, a corresponding fret configuration will appear in the right window.

NOTE: If there are multiple fret configurations for the same chord name, the box next to **Primary** will be checked. Use the **Index** scroller to search for alternatives.

- f. Push **OK**. The fret / chord symbol will appear where you previously clicked.

### 8.3.3 Changing Chord and Fret symbols

If a fret / chord is incorrectly recognized, you can quickly fix it; often by acquiring the value of a nearby chord which is correct.

*To copy the value of one fret / chord symbol and apply it to another,*

- a. **Ctrl + click** on a chord symbol that is identical or similar to the correct chord name. That chord's configuration will be inherited and stored by the cursor.
- b. **Right-click (Option + click for Mac)** on the chord symbol that you wish to change. The stored (correct) chord will then appear in the Guitar Chord Library. If you are satisfied with the naming and fingering of the displayed chord, push **OK**. The correct configuration will be applied to the old chord.

To change an existing chord by selecting one from the library,

- a. Select “Guitar Chord Library” from the FILE menu. Or, **Ctrl + click** on a chord symbol to be changed. Click on the chord again to open the Guitar Chord Library.
- b. Change the root chord, tonality or other extension. Fingerings associated with the selected configuration will appear in the diagram to the right.
- c. Click **OK** once you have found an acceptable chord name / fingering configuration. The chord will become updated.

If you are unhappy with the fingering diagram or fret positioning of any particular chord, you can permanently change it.

To change the fingering configuration of an existing fret symbol,

- a. Push the **Change** button in the main **GCL** window to open the **Change Guitar Chord** editor.
- b. Select the **Frets** tab to open the fingering and frets editor. Edit options are as follows:.

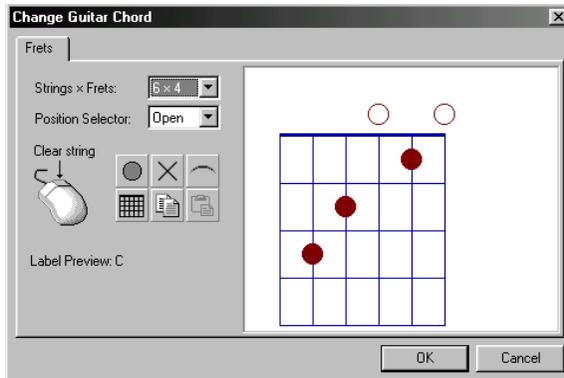


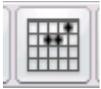
FIGURE 8 - 5: Guitar Chord Library - Fingering Editor

- **Right-click** (**Option + click** for *Mac*) on any finger marker inside the fretboard to remove it.
- **Clear All** (*grid*) removes all current finger markers in fretboard.
- **String Marker** (*dot*) places a finger marker on any string between frets on the fretboard. Clicking above the fretboard nut (*thick line*) places an open string symbol (open dot) at any string position.

- **Barre Marker** (*arc*) places a barre marker above the fretboard by dragging above the nut. When dragged across strings inside the fretboard, the barre marker is positioned between frets.
- **Mute-string marker** (*x*) places an X above any string position to indicate a muted string. When clicked above the nut, any finger marker of that string is deleted.
- For banjo, ukulele, bass or other non-six string fretted instrument or for chords that require more range than 4 frets, choose the configuration you wish from **Strings x Frets** combo box.
- To show fingerings in other than 1st position, choose from **Position Selector**. The solid line represents the fret position.
  - Once changes have been made, push **Done**. The original configuration will be permanently replaced when you press **OK**. If you made a mistake, push **Cancel** and try again.

### 8.3.4 Creating a new chord symbol / fret configuration

If the particular chord symbol or fingering configuration you want does not exist, you can add it to the chord library.



- Push the Guitar Chord button in the Toolbar. The cursor will become a grid. Click where you want to insert a new chord above a staff line. (Be sure the correct staff is “active”)
- In the main GCL window, select a **Root** chord name. Add **Sharp, Flat, Tonality, Extension** and **Augmentation**. If the selected configuration does not exist, no diagram will show.
- Push the **Add** button to open the **Add Guitar Chord** editor.
- Make chord configuration selections in the **Label** tab and desired fret and fingering settings in the **Frets** tab.
- Once changes have been made, push **Done**. In the main GCL window, push **OK** is drop the new chord in place.

### 8.3.5 Adding additional fret configurations to the library

You may wish to add alternative fingering configurations to other chord symbols which share the same chord name. Also, following recognition, you may see some fret symbols without chord names. These can also be configured and added to the library.

*To add alternative fret configurations to the Guitar Chord Library,*

- Ctrl + click** on any existing chord symbol or push the fretboard button in the Toolbar so the cursor becomes a grid.

- b. Click on top of any fret symbol or click anywhere above a staffline to open the chord library.
- c. Push the **Add** button in the main **GCL** window to open the **Add New Chord** editor.
- d. Make chord configuration selections in the **Label** tab and desired fret and fingering settings in the **Frets** tab.
- e. Push **Done**. A notice may appear telling you that another fret configuration with the same chord name exists. When asked if you want to add the new chord to the library, select “**Yes**”.

### 8.3.6 Guitar Library file management

*To export, import, reset or clear a GCL library file,*

- Press **File** in the Chord Library window. The **Library Management** window will open.
  - **Export Library** will save the current set of chord and fret configurations to your hard drive as a .GCL file.
  - **Import Library** will load a saved guitar chord library from a directory and/or drive. Locate the .GCL file and push OK to load.
  - **Reset to Default** will reload original guitar chord library as initially loaded during installation.
  - Clear All Chords deletes all current guitar chord library data.

### 8.3.7 Chord Symbol Preferences

*To modify how all chord symbols appear in the ENF view,*

- a. Open the **Chord Symbols** tab in **Edit > Document Preferences** window. Change the default appearance of chords as follows:

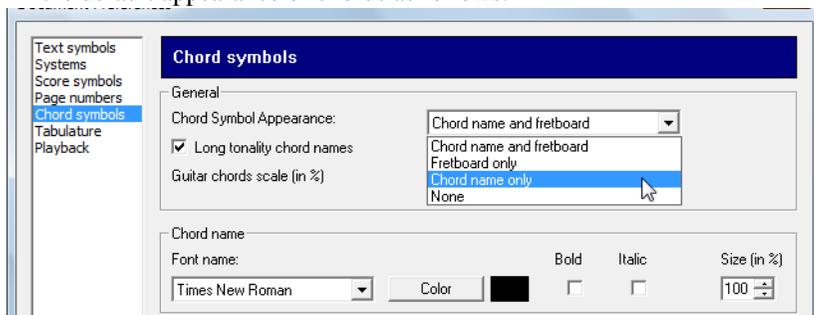


FIGURE 8 - 6: Guitar Chord Preferences

- **Chord Symbol Appearance:** Show Fret & Chord names / Frets only / Chords only / None
- **Long Tonality:** Check this off to display Major tonality as “M” and Minor as “m”.
- **Guitar Chords Scale:** Use the scroller to increase or decrease the size of all fret / chord symbols. Scale by percentage.
- **Chord Name Font Style:** Change the default font, style and size for chord symbol names.
  - b. Press **Apply** or **OK** to apply and close.

### 8.3.8 Editing chord and fret symbols in ENF

*To Copy and Paste any fret or chord symbol,*

- **Ctrl + click** on the chord symbol you wish to copy. With your mouse, click anywhere to paste the symbol you just clicked on. The Guitar Chord Library will open to confirm your choice. Press **OK** to insert.

*To delete existing chord symbol(s),*

- Hit the “**X**” key and click on the symbol you wish to delete. To remove several fret symbols at once, use the **Select** tool (“**O**” key) to highlight as many fret symbols as you wish and hit the **Delete** key.

*To move one or more chord symbols,*

- Use the Select tool (“**O**” key) and highlight one or more fret symbols. Hold the Shift key down (Nudge mode) (Shift) then drag the control point of any fret symbol. This will move to all selected chord symbols.

## 8.4 Non-musical Symbols

### 8.4.1 Using Text and symbols to mark up scores

Solo guitar, violin and other scores often contain many annotations and fingerings. Most can be entered using score symbols and even rehearsal markings.

*To annotate fingerings and string numbers,*

- Use Text mode to enter fingering numbers. If the default text size is too large, add and use a new text style with a smaller font (see "Adding and changing styles of Text and Lyrics", Section 8.2.2, on page 165)
- Use Rehearsal marks to enter string numbers with in circles.
- Use Nudge mode (**Shift**) to position inserted symbols exactly.

## 8.4.2 Document Preferences

Non-lyric and non-text symbols (e.g. dynamic and tempo markings) which appear as text are also editable. Default font, size and behavior of symbols can be changed in Document Preferences.

*To edit Text Symbols,*

Open **Edit > Document Preferences**. The **Text Symbols** tab appears as follows:

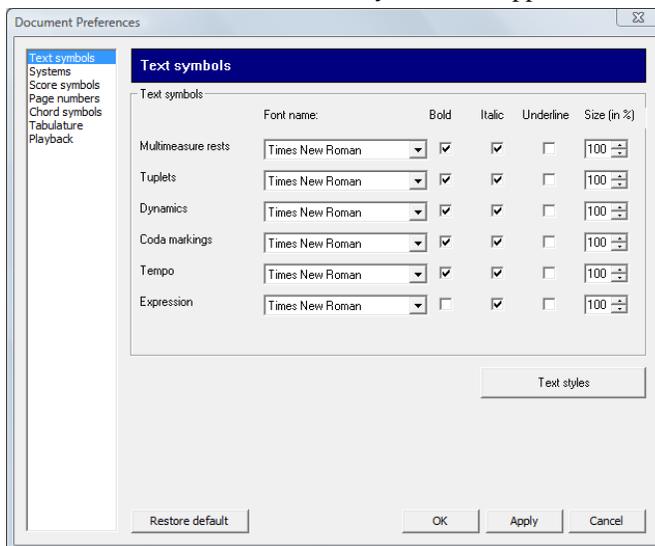


FIGURE 8 - 7: Document Preferences > Text Symbols tab

*To edit Score Symbols font characteristics,*

Open **Edit > Document Preferences > Score Symbols** tab.

## 8.4.3 Bracketing



Instrument families are grouped with the use of brackets. Grand staff and braces are recognized whenever possible. Use **Bracketing** to assign braces, grand staff brackets and to join selected parts into barline groups in an ENF document. This feature can be also be used to change the behavior of brackets and barlines. For example, barlines can be separated by stafflines and/or by instrument grouping.

*To break barlines between stafflines*

- a. Select **Bracketing** from **Edit** menu (**Ctrl + B** (**Cmnd + B** Mac)).

- b. Select “Break barlines by staff”. Click “OK”.

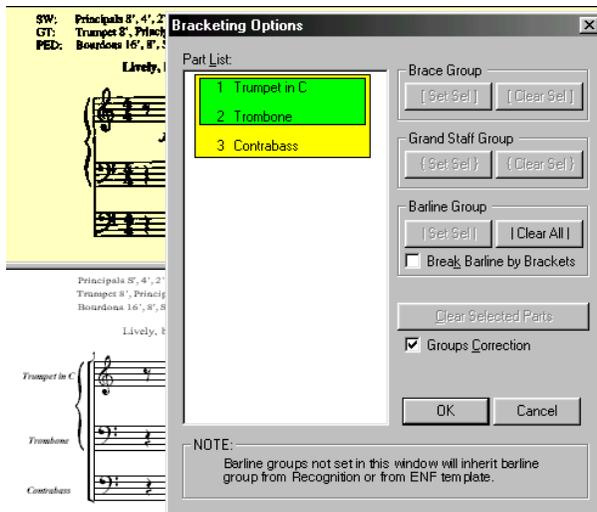


FIGURE 8 - 8: Bracketing window

*To create braces, grand staff brackets and create barline groups,*

- Highlight two or more parts in list to select for grouping.
- Choose **Brace**, **Grand Staff** or **Barline** Group set and press **Set Sel**.
- Continue to select parts for any other type of group. Any selected group can overlap parts of another selected group.
- Click “**Break Barline by Brackets**” checkbox to have barlines break according to instrument families which are already designated by braces, groups and grand staves.
- Choose **Clear Sel** or **Clear Selected Parts** in selected group or **Clear All** to remove groupings.

#### 8.4.4 Score Header

Score headers are not considered “text”. They are unique tags.

*To enter a Score Header at the top of the first page of the ENF file,*

- a. Select **Edit > Score Header**.

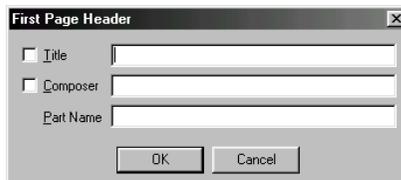


FIGURE 8 - 1: Score Header

- a. Enter a name for the ENF document in the **Title** field.
- b. Enter a **Composer** name if desired.
- c. Type a part name if it is a Score-Part. For definition, see Score-Part on "Score Formats", Section 12.1, on page 239.

*To move a Score Header vertically,*

- With Selector tool active, drag the positioning tab associated with the score header found in the left-hand ruler up or down.

SmartScore supports recognition, editing and playback of percussion and tablature parts. Any existing part (or staff) can be transformed to and from a variety of staff types including TAB, percussion and standard notation. Individual MIDI sounds are linked to all staff lines & spaces. Drums and percussion instruments can be re-linked using the Drum Map editor. Playback can also be enhanced by adding automatic drum styles. New rhythmic styles can easily be imported, created and added to the drum styles library.

## 9.1 Recognizing music with TAB or Percussion parts

- a. In the **Options** section on the left side of the "Begin Recognition" window, check the box: **Recognize tablature, percussion and/or split systems**.

**NOTE:** If your score contains a 4-line part, SmartScore will, by default, consider it to be a TAB staff. If in fact it is a percussion part, be sure to check the box "Convert 4-line staves to percussion". Staff types can be changed after the recognition, but all notation will be lost when converted.

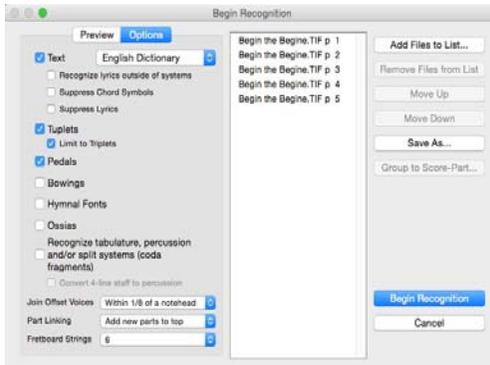


FIGURE 9 - 1: Recognition - Selected Files / Options / Preview

## 9.2 Converting staff line types

You may convert staff properties simply by choosing an alternative staff type. For example, you may want to convert a line of standard notation (melody) to guitar TAB (6-string guitar). Or reverse it: change TAB to notation. This is all done in Staff Properties.

To change staff property types),

- a. Select the Properties Tool then click on the yellow arrow to the left of the staff you wish to change.

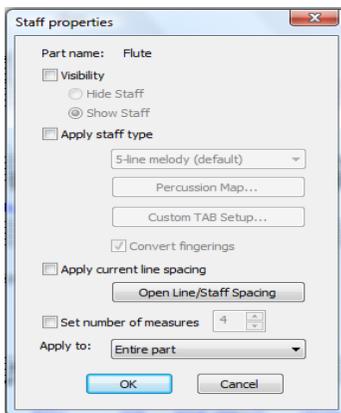


FIGURE 9 - 1: Staff Properties: Changing staff type

- b. Check the “Apply staff type” box and choose a new staff line configuration from the list of available staff types in the pull-down menu.
- c. Choose how to apply the change in the “Apply to” pull-down menu:  
*Entire part, Current staffline or system, All parts in all systems, System +* (active system forward). Push **OK** to apply the change.

**NOTE:** It is recommended to correct mis-recognized symbols before changing the staff height since this could cause the TIFF / ENF screens. to go out of sync. In that case, the floating **scan window** opens so you will still maintain some reference.

### 9.3 Working with tablature (TAB) parts

Parts written in TAB format are automatically recognized if the option “Recognize TABs and Percussion Staff Lines” is selected prior to recognition (see "Recognition Options", Section 3.5.1, on page 25). TAB scores are edited in a similar fashion as standard ENF notation. Parts written in standard notation (melody staff) can be converted to the TAB format. Recognized TAB music can also be converted to standard notation. Converting one to the other is done in the **Staff Properties** window. See "Converting staff line types", Section 9.2, on page 175.

### 9.3.1 Tablature notation display in SmartScore

Tablature notes (fret numerals) are displayed as numbers on top of a string line (6 lines for guitar). The number represents the fret that string is to be played (with “0” representing an open or unfretted string). SmartScore uses an unique notation convention that not only displays the rhythmic value of each TAB numeral, but also its voicing. Note duration values (rhythmic cues) belonging to Voice 1 appear above the staff. Rhythmic cues belonging to Voice 2 appear below the staff (in red).

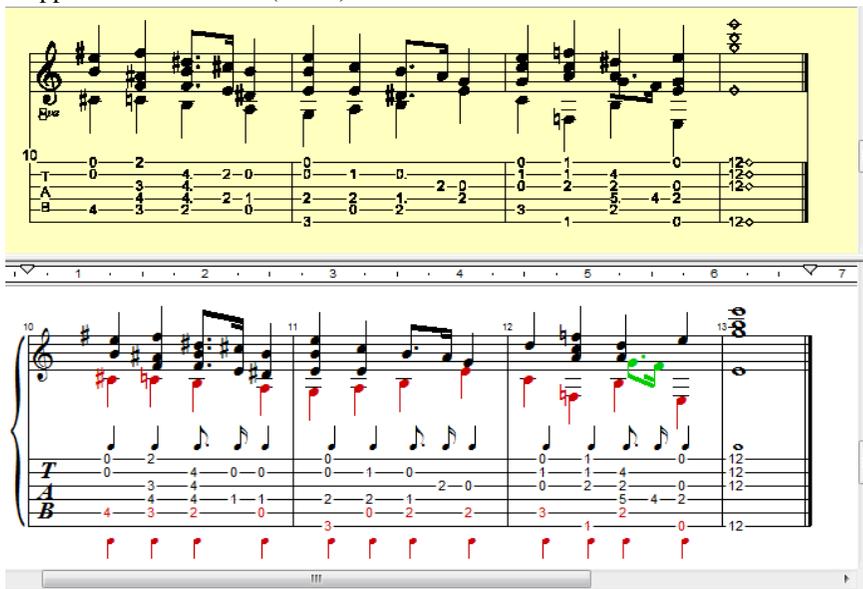


FIGURE 9 - 2: SmartScore TAB notation (typical)

### 9.3.2 Change fingering configurations

Changing fingerings is easily done in Nudge mode. Moving a fret numeral to a new string automatically updates its fret number.

*To reassign a fret numeral to another string*

- Hold down the SHIFT button (Nudge mode).
- Drag the handle of any fret numeral to an adjacent string. The number will automatically become updated to reflect its new finger position. Its playback pitch remains the same.

### 9.3.3 Editing TAB symbols

*To enter a fret numeral inside a TAB staff,*

First select a note value: **Ctrl** + **click** on any nearby note with the desired value or select that note value from the Notes palette. Position the cursor on the line you wish to enter a numeral and left click to enter the numeral as Voice 1. Right-click to enter the numeral so it is assigned to Voice 2 (red / below staff).

NOTE: To add a TAB numeral to an existing chord cluster, position the cursor inside the vertical line of numerals until they highlight blue, then click to insert.

*To change the fingering of any TAB numeral,*

Enter Insert mode by hitting the “**C**” key or selecting the “**Insert**” button from the lower Toolbar. Click on any numeral until a red box (numeral editor) appears. Enter a new number.

NOTE: You will have 4 seconds to enter a new number before the numeral editor becomes inactive. You may change the default time period by going to **Edit > Program Preferences > Tablature > Timer**.

*To change the rhythmic value of a TAB numeral,*

**Ctrl** + **click** on any nearby note with the desired value or select that note value from the Notes palette. Click on the rhythmic value displayed directly above or below the numeral you wish to change. Horizontal note spacing will automatically be adjusted. Measures with rhythmic errors will highlight in pink, exactly as “melody” lines behave. To interpret pink measures, see Section 5.2.2, “Rhythmic errors” on page 77

*To change to voicing of a TAB numeral,*

You must first delete the numeral by hitting the “**X**” key and clicking on the numeral. Hit the “**C**” key to enter **Insert** mode and select the correct note value, if necessary. Position the cursor where you want to insert the numeral and right-click to insert it as Voice 2 (red) or left-click to insert the numeral as Voice 1 (black).

*To delete a TAB numeral,*

Simply hit the “**X**” key and click on any numeral. This action will delete both single TAB numerals and numerals in chord clusters.

### 9.3.4 Creating a guitar TAB staff below a melody line



You may wish to duplicate a part written in standard notation and have it display as guitar tablature. Or you may wish to take a guitar solo written in tablature and have it also display as standard notation. It's simple...

*To duplicate a notation staff and transform it to a TAB staff,*

- a. Open any ENF score. Go to **Edit > Score Structure**.
- b. Click on the box that represents the part you wish to copy. Push the **“Duplicate”** button. The new part will appear below the original box. Click on the newly-created part and drag left to create an “association” line to the ENF *Score Part* box next to it. Select **“Apply to New”**. A new ENF document will be created, leaving the original unchanged.
- c. In the ENF view, you will see the duplicated part beneath the original part. With the Properties Tool selected, click on the yellow triangle to the left of the new part. Select **“5-line guitar TAB”** from the Staff Type pull-down menu and unify staff and line spacing as described in 9.2 on page 175 and **“Tablature notation display in SmartScore”** on page 177.

To reverse the process (duplicate a TAB staff and transform it to standard notation), follow the same steps above but instead, choose **“6-line melody”** from the Staff Type pull-down menu.

After converting a “melody” to a “TAB” staff, you may want to change the fingering. Refer to "Change fingering configurations", Section 9.3.2, on page 177 for details.

### 9.3.5 Unifying TAB line distances and line spacing.

After converting “melody” to “TAB” or vice-versa, you may want to change line distances and unify those changes for a clean look.

*To resize the TAB spacing and apply it to the entire part,*

- a. Position your cursor over a TAB staff line and manipulate the red (distance) and blue (line space) tabs per Section 6.2. The next step will unify all TAB staves.
- b. Select **“Staff Spacing”** from the FILE menu. Or, select the Properties Tool and right-click into the staff that has been altered. Choose **Line/Staff Spacing**.
- c. In the **“Copy settings to”** menu, select **“All Systems”** and push **“Copy”**.
- d. Push **“OK”**. All staves belonging to that part will adjust.



An alternative method for “unifying” layout is as follows:



- a. With your cursor over the modified staff line, hit the “Caps Lock” key to lock in focus on that staff.
- b. Push the “Unify” button in the Navigator (“U” key). Select “**Unify System, Staff and Line Spacing**” (Based on active system). Push **OK**.
- c. Hit the “Caps Lock” key again to release the active system.

## 9.4 Editing and creating percussion parts

### 9.4.1 Editing a percussion part

SmartScore recognition acquires and reconstructs variable-line staves when “Recognize TAB and percussion staff lines” option is checked in the **Begin Recognition** window (See “Recognition Options”, Section 3.5.1, on page 25).

*To edit recognized notes on a percussion staff,*

- a. First, check that the number of lines of the percussion part is correct: If incorrect, you may change the number of lines as described in Section 9.2, “Converting staff line types”.
- b. Then ensure that the percussion part has correct number of lines in all systems: Select “Staff Spacing” from the FILE menu. Or, select the Properties Tool and right-click into the percussion staff. Choose **Line/Staff Spacing**. In the “**Copy settings to**” menu, select “All Systems” and push “**Copy**”. When done, push “**OK**”. All percussion staves belonging to that part will become updated.
- c. Edit drum notes exactly as any normal “melody” staff including note duration value and pitch. A MIDI drum instrument is associated with every line and space and will sound as you **Shift + drag** notes up or down. If necessary, you may need to reassign MIDI drum sounds using the

### 9.4.2 Playback > Drumset

*To reassign drum instruments to percussion staff lines...*

- a. With Property Tool active, click in the yellow arrow associated with any percussion staff.

- b. Push **“Percussion Map”** button in the **Staff Properties** window to access the drum instrument map.

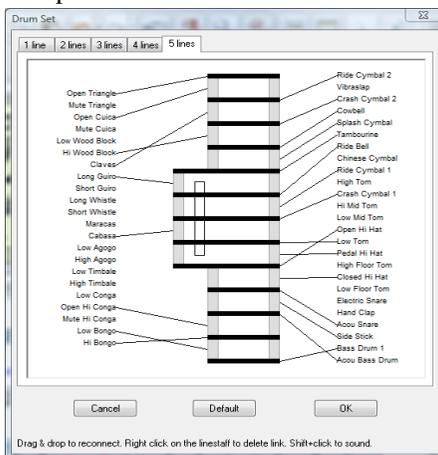


FIGURE 8 - 1: Drum-to-pitch links (Drum Set)

- c. Click on a drum instrument name and drag to a new line or space. If another instrument is linked to the line or space, it will unlink.
- d. Clicking and dragging a line or space to an instrument name will also create a new link and delete any existing link.
- e. Press **OK** to finalize changes. Press **Cancel** to undo changes.

NOTE: Accidentals are ignored regardless of the key of the score.

### 9.4.3 Creating a percussion staff from scratch

- a. Position your cursor inside the staff line where you wish to insert a new percussion line and **right-click (Ctrl + click for Mac)**.

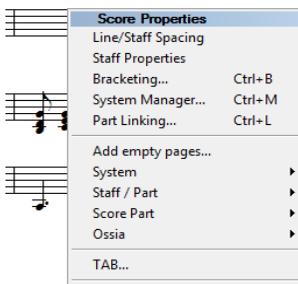


FIGURE 9 - 1: Staff Line Options (Right-click)

- b. Select **Staff > Insert** (above or below).
- c. See "To change staff property types)," Section , on page 176 to change the part from notation to percussion.
- d. Select *eighth note* from "Notes" palette and using *beam direction tools*, create the following pattern. Hit **Spacebar** to play back.



FIGURE 9 - 2: Creating a drum pattern

NOTE: Simultaneous drum sounds must be contained in the same voice. Therefore, you will need to use the **Cluster** tool to add additional drum "note heads" to an existing note stem. Holding down **Shift** and dragging a notehead up or down will allow you to hear each drum sound associated with each space and line.



## 9.5 Automatic Drum Patterns

It's more fun if it's got a beat! Simply select a drum accompaniment or you can add customized patterns to the drum library yourself.

### 9.5.1 Play back with automatic drum pattern

To select an instant drum pattern for ENF playback,

- With any ENF file open, click on the **Drum Pattern** button in the Toolbar.
- Sort each column by clicking on its name in the column header.

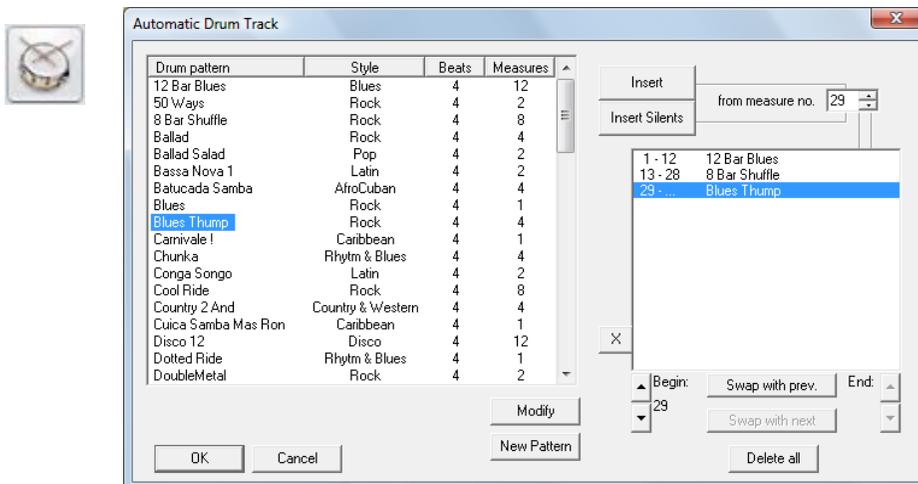


FIGURE 9 - 3: Automatic Drum Track Window

- Click on a pattern that matches the time signature and style of your ENF file.
- Choose a starting measure in the “*from measure no.*” field and push the **Insert** button.
- To enter another drum groove at another location, repeat steps c. and d. above.
- If you wish to mute drum playback for one or more measures, select the starting measure and push the “**Insert Silents**” button.

NOTE: Insert Silents are automatically inserted if the **Begin** and **End** points of 2 or more patterns are not sequential.

- Press **OK** to accept the selection.
- Press the **spacebar** to hear your file playback with drum accompaniment.

To Remove a drum pattern from the library,

- Locate the **Styles** folder inside the SmartScore application folder and delete the **.ssd** file you wish to remove.

### 9.5.2 Adding custom drum patterns from ENF

The drum pattern library is expandable. You can add new patterns that you have either created yourself or imported from a MIDI file which contains a drum track on MIDI Channel 10.

To add an ENF drum pattern to the automatic drum pattern library,

- a. Open an ENF file which contains a percussion part (written with a percussion clef) or,
- b. Open an ENF file in which you have created your own drum pattern. Refer to "Creating a percussion staff from scratch", Section 9.4.3 for more information on how to create drum patterns.
- c. Click the **MIDI** button in the **Navigator** to open the MIDI Overview. See Section "Selecting MIDI views", Section 10.1.1, on page 187 for more details on changing MIDI views.
- d. Select **Edit > Create Automatic Drum Pattern**.

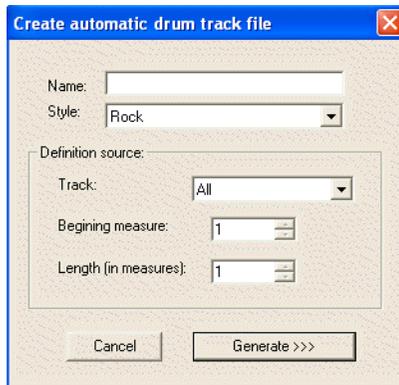


FIGURE 9 - 4: Creating a drum pattern from a MIDI file

- e. Locate the track in which the drum is played and select it in the **Track** field. Note that MIDI drums will sound only if they are assigned to MIDI Channel 10.

**NOTE:** To check the channel number of a track, right-click (**alt + click** for Mac) next to the track number in MIDI Overview then select **Piano Roll**. The channel number (and its color) will appear in the upper left corner of the Piano Roll View. Close

the Piano Roll window to return to Overview window. Another option is to simply open the Playback Console (**Ctrl + 9**). Next to each track number listing is a colored box containing the MIDI channel number assigned.

- f. Enter the name you wish to give the pattern in the *Name* field.
- g. Select a musical style to classify the new pattern and enter it in the *Style* pull-down menu.
- h. Locate the first measure where you wish the pattern to begin and enter it into the *Beginning Measure* field.
- i. Decide how many measures you wish the pattern to contain and enter it in the *Length (in Measures)* field. This is a very important decision if you want to have proper-sounding patterns.
- j. Click **Generate** to add the pattern to the library. It's name will then appear in the **Automatic Drum Pattern** window.



*TIP:* Add “fills” to longer patterns (8 or 12 measures). Repeated fills in patterns having 1 or 2 measures usually sound dumb.

- Importing MIDI drum patterns
  - a. Push the **Open** button in the Navigator (**File > Open**) and click to select *MIDI* from the “*Files of Type*” pull-down menu. Browse to a MIDI file containing a drum track and double-click.
  - b. Push the *Play* button to hear the MIDI file play back. Push *Close*.
  - c. The imported MIDI file will appear in the MIDI Overview window.
  - d. Repeat the process from Step d) above.



## 9.6 Virtual Drum Kit

This option allows you to create a drum track to accompany any ENF playback without requiring a drum machine or any other external MIDI device. It maps selected MIDI drum sounds to the keys of your computer keyboard. MIDI quantization to sixteenth notes is applied by default. For more information about quantization, see “Snap to”, Section 10.8.3, on page 208.

### 9.6.1 Recording a virtual drum track

*To create a virtual MIDI drum track,*

- a. Open MIDI View.

- b. Right click inside any number the **Track Number** column. Select “New Track”.
- c. A MIDI Record view will open. Test drum sounds by hitting the center keys on the two front rows of your computer keyboard.
- d. When ready, hit the **Record** button. You will hear a metronome sound for one measure. Playback and drum recording begins.
- e. Hit Stop when finished. Close the MIDI window to return to ENF.

### 9.6.2 Defining Virtual Drum Kit

*To change a MIDI drum and link to your computer keyboard,*

- a. Select **Options > Virtual Drum Kit Definition**

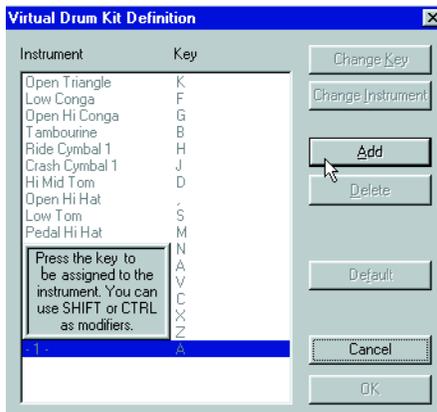


FIGURE 9 - 5: Virtual Drum Kit Definition

- b. Click on an instrument / key in *Instrument* list.
- c. To reassign a MIDI drum instrument, push **Change Instrument** and make another MIDI drum selection in the pull-down menu.
- d. To reassign a keyboard key for that instrument, push **Change Key** and press any keyboard key to be linked to that instrument.
- e. When finished, press **OK**.

*To add a MIDI drum and link it to your computer keyboard,*

- a. Push **Add**.
- b. Press a key to become associated with the sound.
- c. Select a new drum sound from the pull-down menu.
- d. When finished, press **OK**.



Underlying MIDI data of an ENF score can be viewed and manipulated in one of three MIDI views: Overview, Piano Roll and Event List.

## 10.1 MIDI Views

### 10.1.1 Selecting MIDI views

To open MIDI environment from ENF and select a MIDI view,



- a. Press the **MIDI** button in the Navigator or choose **View > New MIDI View (Ctrl +I / Cmnd+I (Mac))**.

The New MIDI View Window will open.

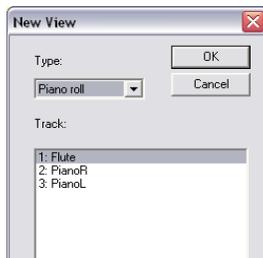


FIGURE 10 - 1: New MIDI View

- b. In the **Type** window, select the type of MIDI view desired, **Overview, Piano Roll or Event List**).



- Overview

This view displays all MIDI tracks (parts) found in the open Score-Part.



- Piano Roll

This view displays all MIDI note events found in the selected track.

- Event List

This view lists all MIDI events and every detail associated with them.



The above MIDI view buttons are accessible from the MIDI Toolbar.

## 10.1.2 MIDI Toolbar

The MIDI Toolbar (**View > Toolbars > MIDI Toolbar**) includes buttons for opening **Overview**, **Piano Roll**, **Event List** views. Also visible are the *Shuttle tool*, *Record*, *Record to New Track*, *Record Virtual Drum*, *Delete Track* and *Insert Instrument Change* buttons.



FIGURE 10 - 2: MIDI Toolbar

## 10.1.3 Closing MIDI Views



Each MIDI view (**Overview**, **Piano Roll** and **Event List**) has its own “close” icon in the upper left-hand corner of the window. Click to close an active MIDI view window. Or select **File > Close**. Closing the last MIDI view will return display to its associated ENF view.

## 10.2 Track Overview



Overview provides a “bird’s eye view” of all existing MIDI tracks. Some editing functions are limited

Untitled	1	2	3	4	5
1 : PianoR	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
2 : PianoL	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

FIGURE 10 - 3: Track Overview window

### 10.2.1 Selecting tracks and MIDI events

Right-clicking (**option + click Mac**) into a track’s Name field in Overview will display the track properties. Double-clicking into a track’s Name field will open its Piano Roll view.



FIGURE 10 - 4: MIDI Track Properties

The Track Properties window allows for editing of the Track Name and its Transposition. It is also used to create new MIDI tracks. Push Piano Roll or Event List buttons to view selected track in one of these views.

NOTE: The Transpose selection window will actually move all the note events of the selected track by half steps.

- New Track will create an empty new track.
- Selecting Duplicate Track will create an exact copy of the active track and insert it at the bottom of the track listing.
- Delete Track will erase the highlighted MIDI track completely.

## 10.3 Playback

### 10.3.1 Spacebar

- Press the spacebar to Play. Press again to Pause. Press again to resume Play. Press the comma key (“;”) to Rewind to the start.

### 10.3.2 Mini-Console

The Mini-Console is a dock-able (tear-off) Toolbar that plays, records, rewinds and stops playback.



FIGURE 10 - 5: Mini-Console Transport

*No MIDI  
Recording*



The “spring-loaded” tempo slider will increase or decrease tempo speed depending on the distance it is pulled from the center. Releasing the mouse will return playback tempo to the default speed.

-  Play button initiates/resumes playback of the active MIDI file. Once playback has begun, the Play button becomes Pause. Use this button to retain MIDI data after returning to ENF display.
-  Stop button stops playback/recording of the MIDI. Play/Record is re-initialized at 0 (rewinds to the beginning).
-  Rewind button resets playback to the beginning of the range.
-  The Record button will be active only when a MIDI Out device is selected. Pushing the Record button will create a new MIDI track and will launch a new recording session. When Record is lit, press Play button to begin recording a new MIDI performance to a new track. When recording to a new MIDI track, existing MIDI

data, instruments, channels and transpositions of the original ENF or imported MIDI file will be maintained.

NOTE: All playback functions are also available in the **Realtime** menu (in MIDI) or **Playback** menu (in ENF).

*TIP:* To select an entire track for cutting and pasting, go to Overview and click (**option + click** for *Mac*) in the track's Name field.

### 10.3.3 MIDI Devices

To set the MIDI input and output devices,

- a. Select **MIDI Devices** from the **Options** menu. The MIDI Devices window will open.

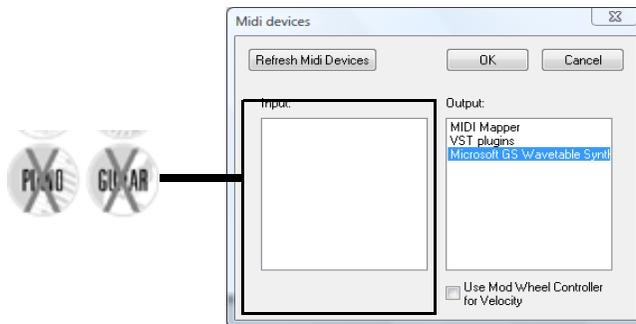


FIGURE 10 - 6: Options > MIDI Devices

- b. Click on the **MIDI Input** device / interface you will use for recording new MIDI data.
- c. Click on the **MIDI Output** device you wish to use for MIDI playback. The MIDI device window will display all installed MIDI device drivers. MIDI Mapper is the default in Windows and is most commonly used for sound cards although a specific soundcard driver may be selected from the Output list.
- d. Press **OK** to set the selected MIDI devices as the current SmartScore MIDI sources. The selected device then moves to the top of the list.

NOTE: If the desired device is not listed in the MIDI Devices window make sure the device driver has been properly installed. Check any software that was installed with your MIDI device and/or download MIDI driver from manufacturer's website. When installing a new MIDI driver, reboot to initialize the new driver.

### 10.3.4 Playback Range

To specify part of the score for playback,

- a. Select **Set Play Range** from the **Realtime** menu.

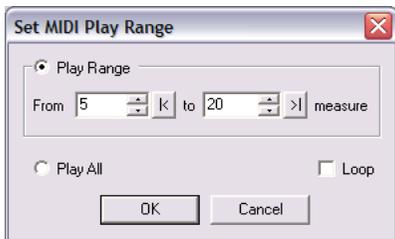


FIGURE 10 - 7: Set MIDI Play Range

- b. Set the first measure and last measure of the **Play Range**.
- c. Mark **Play All** to play the entire score.
- d. Check **Loop** to continually repeat the assigned playback range.

## 10.4 Piano Roll

In the familiar MIDI piano roll view, it is possible to alter MIDI note events and fine tune other playback parameters. MIDI events are only editable when “*Show Actual Playback*” option in the **View** menu is checked off. When “*Show Actual Playback*” is checked, articulations (trills, tremolos, etc.) display but cannot be edited since articulations are controlled by **Properties**. The Piano Roll view is track-based.

### 10.4.1 Selecting MIDI tracks

- To move from track to track, click the Track Paging buttons located in the Toolbar.

To select and display a track in Piano Roll view:

- a. Select the MIDI button in the Navigator. In the New MIDI View window, select a track or Part Name. Pushing OK will open the selected track in piano roll format.



FIGURE 10 - 8: Overview - Selecting a track



- b. Select the MIDI track you wish to display and press OK.
- c. Select the magnifying glass from the Toolbar. Left click to zoom in and right click (**option + click** for *Mac*) to zoom out of the Piano Roll view.

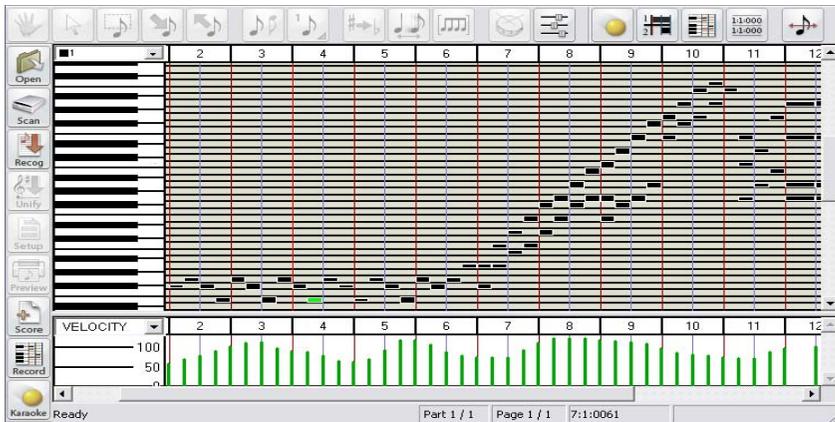


FIGURE 10 - 9: MIDI Piano Roll View

- d. Another method of zooming in or out is to drag measure markers horizontally. Dragging to the right zooms in and dragging to the left zooms in.

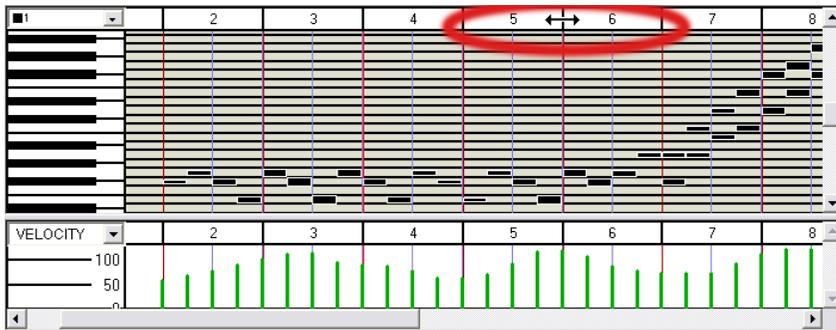


FIGURE 10 - 10: Horizontal zoom by dragging measure markers

## 10.4.2 Tiling ENF and MIDI views



Using the Tile Windows feature, you can view both ENF and MIDI windows simultaneously. This is useful if timing problems are encountered while editing ENF notation. By switching to MIDI Piano Roll view and pushing the Tile Windows button, it is possible to examine underlying MIDI events while referring to the same region as notation in the associated ENF window.

*To tile all open document windows,*

- Push the Tile Windows button located both in the Toolbar and in the Navigator palette.



Tile Windows  
Menu Button

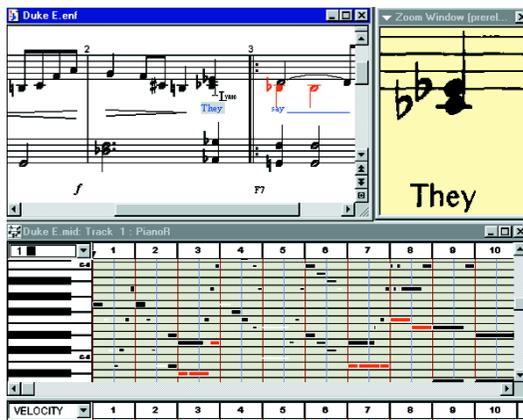


FIGURE 10 - 11: ENF / MIDI Tile View (with floating Zoom window)

## 10.4.3 Inserting program changes (Assign new MIDI instrument for playback)

You can insert any number of instrument changes into a MIDI track.

**NOTE:** This same function (inserting a change of instrument for playback) can be done in the ENF notation view. See "Changing instrument sounds on the fly", Section 4.5.4, on page 47 for details.

*To insert a Program Change (MIDI instrument change) in a MIDI track:*

- a. In **Piano Roll** view, position cursor and click to drop the red marker where you wish to make a MIDI instrument change.

- b. Push the Program Change button in the MIDI Toolbar or select **Edit > Program Change**.

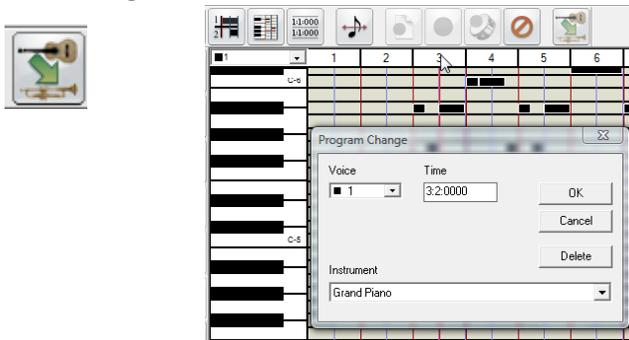


FIGURE 10 - 12: MIDI Program Change (Piano Roll)

- c. Select a new MIDI **Instrument** from the pull-down menu.

In the Voice pull-down menu, select the voice number you wish to apply the new instrument sound to. For more about Voice Color Mode, turn to "Working with Contrapuntal Voices", Section 7.9.

- d. Press **OK**.

NOTE: List of instruments is determined by the selected **Instrument** set selected in **Options > Instrument Settings**. Instrument set is also able to be selected in the Playback Console (see "MIDI Setup", Section 4.15.1, on page 72).

- e. An inverted red triangle will indicate the point where the program change was inserted. Clicking on any Program Change triangle will open the **Program Change** window for additional changes.

NOTE: SmartScore supports multiple MIDI channels within each MIDI track. This allows for contrapuntal voices within ENF staff lines to be assigned to different instruments *within each MIDI track*. In other words, multiple voices in ENF are equivalent to multiple channels within a MIDI track. This is a sort of hybrid MIDI type (MIDI Type 1/Type 0 hybrid).

## 10.4.4 Velocity and Tempo Graphical Controllers

In Piano Roll view, the bottom pane of the window displays a graphical, continuous-change MIDI controller. Click into Controller Selector pull-down menu and select a new MIDI controller you wish to view.

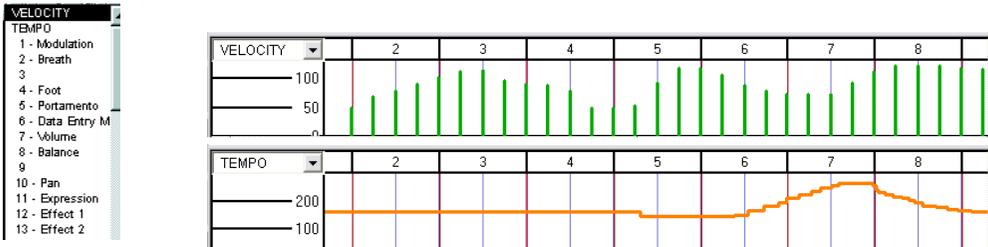


FIGURE 10 - 13: Velocity and Tempo controllers in Piano Roll view

- With the pencil mouse pointer, click and drag a curve over the range you wish to apply the effect.

## 10.4.5 Shuttle Tool

The Shuttle Tool allows you to sound MIDI events forward or backward by dragging the mouse over a range of events.

To operate the Shuttle Tool,



In Piano Roll view, the “S” key toggles the Shuttle Tool off and on. To manually select, press the **Toggle Shuttle** button in the MIDI Toolbar or go to the **Options** menu and select **Shuttle On**. Click and hold anywhere in an Overview or Piano Roll and drag the Shuttle Tool to the right to play the MIDI file at your own tempo. Drag the Shuttle Tool to the left to rewind and hear the MIDI file simultaneously.

*To insert or change the voice assignment of selected note event(s):*

- a. Use the Voice Selection pull-down menu located above the piano keyboard to select a voice number.
- b. Right-click and drag to create a note event.

## 10.4.6 MIDI Instrument settings

To change MIDI instrument parameters,

- a. Select **Instrument Settings** under the **Options** menu. In Playback Console, push the **Set Instrument** button. This will open the Instrument Settings window.

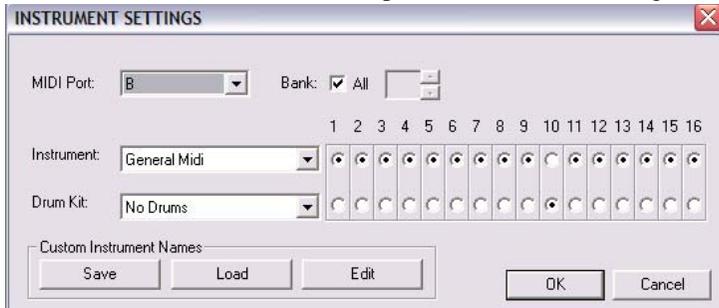


FIGURE 10 - 14: Instrument Settings

- b. Select the **MIDI Port** of the MIDI instrument you will be adjusting with the MIDI Port pull-down menu.
- c. Choose a specific Instrument Bank or all Banks from the selected MIDI Port if numerical banks are supported by your MIDI device.
- d. Select the type of MIDI Instrument (GM, MT32, GS, Yamaha XG, Numeric or Custom) from the **Instrument** pull-down menu.
- e. Use the radio buttons to activate or deactivate specific MIDI channels for selected **Instrument** set and **Drum** set. The default MIDI channel for drums is 10.
- f. Use the **Drum** pull-down menu to select the type of MIDI Drum set your device supports (GM, No Drums, Roland GS Drums, Yamaha XG Drums, Numeric or Custom).
- g. Push **Custom** to create a formatted text document for displaying custom instrument names for your MIDI device. **Edit** to change.
- h. **Save** will save **Custom** patch names as a formatted text document (.TXT). Save this file then open it in a word processing application and enter your patch names. Then save as a text document.
- i. **Load** will allow you to load the **Custom** text file. Your custom patch names will display throughout SmartScore's MIDI patch selection windows (Instrument Templates and Playback Console).

## 10.4.7 MIDI event selection

Under the **Edit** menu choosing **Select** opens the Select Window.

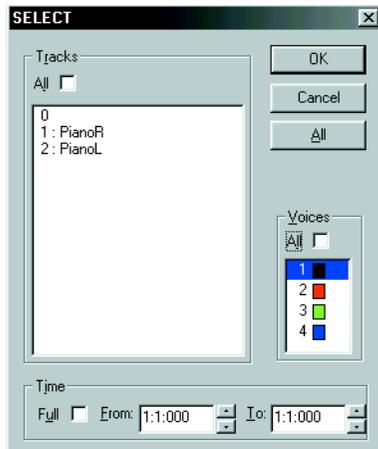


FIGURE 10 - 15: Select Event window

Select **All** tracks or an individual track or voice to highlight for cut, paste, pitch shifting or assigning parameters. Choose **Full** time to display the full length of the MIDI file or designate a portion of the file to display by entering the measure, beat, and tick into the From and To fields.

**NOTE:** **Edit > Select All** is only available from a Piano Roll or Event List view.

Selecting MIDI events using mouse click-and-drag can be done from any view. Mouse functions work the same in all views.

*To select a note or group of notes:*

- Click on the individual note or click and drag to Group Select many notes.

*To add note(s) to the Group:*

- Hold down the Control key and click on the un-selected note(s).

*To select note events within a given time frame:*

- a. Click in Piano Roll to mark the beginning of the time frame.
- b. Hold down the **Shift** key and click again to set the end of the time frame. The selected range will highlight in grey.

## 10.4.8 Changing MIDI event attributes

*To change the start time of selected note event(s):*

- Click and drag the left edge of the note(s) to the position you want.

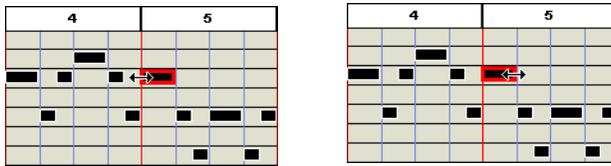


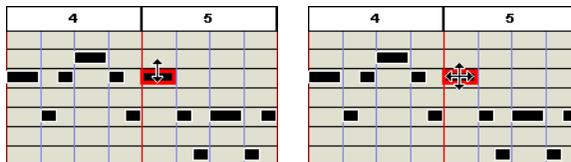
FIGURE 10 - 16: Editing MIDI note on/off events

*To change the duration of selected note event(s):*

- Click and drag the right edge of a note to change a note's duration.

*To change the velocity (loudness/note attack) of selected note event(s):*

- Drag the top and bottom edges of a note adjust the note's velocity.



**Changing note velocity**

**Changing note pitch**

FIGURE 10 - 17: Editing MIDI note velocities and pitches

*To change the pitch or position of selected note event(s):*

- Click and drag the center of the note to change pitch (vertical drag) or note placement (horizontal drag).

NOTE: The arrow keys on your computer keyboard can also be used to adjust the pitch and start time of the selected note.

NOTE: To realign MIDI events to the nearest starting point (quantization), go to **Options** > **Snap to** and select the base rhythmic value.

*To delete selected note event(s):*

- Hit the **Delete** key to remove any highlighted notes.

To change the velocity and/or the duration of selected note(s):

- a. Select the Velocity/Duration option from the Edit menu. The Velocity and Duration window will open.

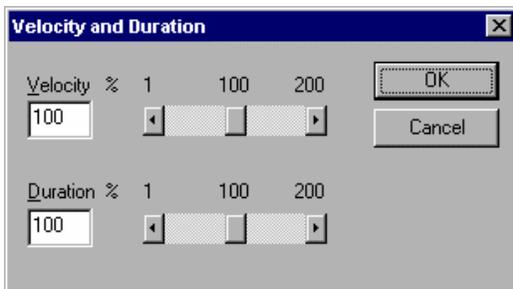


FIGURE 10 - 18: Velocity and Duration window

- b. Use the sliders or type in numbers to increase or decrease the velocity or duration of the selected note(s) by a percentage. Example: You wish to double the duration of a group of selected notes. In the Velocity/Duration window move the Duration slider to 200%.
- c. Press **OK**.

#### 10.4.9 Note Event window

Double-clicking on any note event will open the Note Event window.

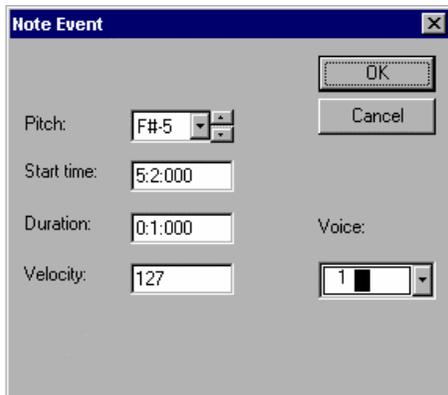


FIGURE 10 - 19: Note Event window

The Note Event window allows access to and adjustment of an individual note's parameters.

- Raise or lower the **Pitch** of the Note Event
- **Start Time** changes when the Note Event begins
- The **Duration** of the Note Event can be shortened or lengthened
- Increase or decrease the **Velocity** of the Note Event
- Select a different **Voice** for the Note Event

#### 10.4.10 Cut/Copy and Paste

Click and drag the mouse or use **Edit > Select** to select a region that you would like to cut, copy or paste.

- **Cut** removes the highlighted notes from the score and places them in the clipboard.
- **Copy** stores the selected notes to the clipboard without removing them from the score.
- **Paste** will insert the contents of the clipboard back into the score without deleting the existing notes. Click where you want to insert the music into the score.
- **Paste Special** will open the Paste Special window.



FIGURE 10 - 20: Paste Special

The Paste Special window offers several options for pasting the contents of the clipboard back into the music.

- **Add to existing events** will add the contents of the clipboard to the selected area without erasing the existing notes.
- **Replace existing events** will replace the existing music with the contents of the clipboard.
- **Move to make room** will push the existing music backward and then insert the contents of the clipboard.

- Use **Repetitions** to determine the number of times the contents of the clipboard will be inserted.
- **Start from time** designates where the inserted music will begin by choosing the measure, beat, and tick.
- Select **Start from track** to paste to a selected track number.
- **All to track** will insert the contents of the clipboard, no matter how many tracks were originally selected, into one track.

## 10.5 Event List

To view and edit detailed MIDI events, meta events, note events, controllers, program changes, key and time signatures, etc. in a selected track,

- Press the **MIDI** button of the Navigator or in the menu, select **View > New MIDI View** or **Window > Event List**.
- Choose Event List from the Type pull-down menu
- Select a track to view and press **OK**.

The Event List displays every MIDI event and note attribute of the selected track:

Type	Voice	Time	Duration	Pitch	Other...
# Name		1:1:000			Violin I
# Key Signature		1:1:000			1 # major
# Channel Prefix		1:1:000			0
# Instrument		1:1:000			Violin I
Program Change	1	1:1:000			Strings
@ Pan	1	1:1:000			64
Note On	1	1:1:000	0:0:048	G-5	85
Note On	1	1:1:048	0:0:048	F#-5	85
Note On	1	2:1:000	1:0:000	G-5	85
Note On	1	2:1:096	0:0:048	D-5	85
Note On	1	2:1:144	0:0:048	C-5	85
Note On	1	2:2:000	1:0:000	D-5	85
Note On	1	2:2:096	0:0:048	G-5	85
Note On	1	2:2:144	0:0:048	F#-5	85
Note On	1	3:1:000	1:0:000	G-5	85

FIGURE 10 - 21: Event List

- Select what event types are displayed in the Event List by checking or un-checking the Event Type boxes along the top of the Event List.
- To scroll the Event List display during playback, check the “*Scroll when playing*” box in the Event List window.
- To page from track to track, click on Track Paging buttons in the Toolbar.



## 10.5.1 Changing parameters of selected notes

*To change parameters of a group of selected notes:*

- Click in any of the columns to change the parameters of an existing MIDI event or double click in the Type column of a Note Event to open the Note On window.

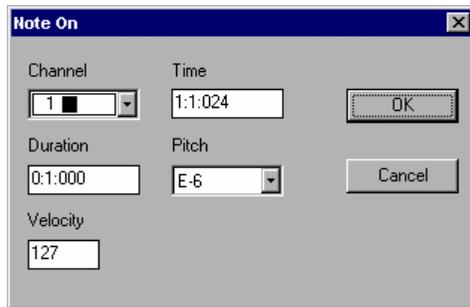


FIGURE 10 - 22: Note On window

The Note On window, like the Note Event window, allows for adjustment of an individual note's parameters: Channel, Time, Duration, Pitch, and Velocity.

## 10.5.2 Inserting note events

*To insert new events in the Event List view,*

- a. Click the Event you want the Note to follow. Select **New** from the upper left-hand corner of the Event List. The **Create New Event** window will open.
- b. Scroll to **Note On** in the Event Type menu.
- c. Press **OK**.
- d. A Note On event will be inserted into the Event List.
- e. Enter the Voice, Time, Duration, and Pitch of the new event by clicking in the corresponding columns or double-click in the **Type** column to open the Note On window.

### 10.5.3 Editing Key, Time and Tempo

Click in any column to make changes to any existing MIDI events. To insert a new tempo, key, or time signature click the event you want the new event to follow. Press the New button. The Create New Event window will open.

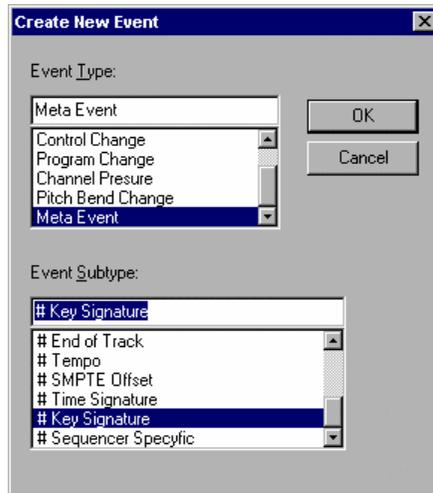


FIGURE 10 - 23: Create New Event window

Use the scroll bar to select Meta Event. A Meta Event is a MIDI file instruction. Scroll through the Event Subtype window to choose Tempo, Time Signature, or Key Signature. Press **OK**. Use the Other column to select the new tempo, time signature, or key signature OR double-click in the Type column to open an event-specific window. You may type in a new value.

### 10.5.4 Inserting Non-Note Events

Any MIDI event that is not a *note-on* or *note-off* event is a *non-note* event. This includes MIDI Control Changes, Program Changes, Channel Pressure, Pitch Bend information, and Meta Events.

*To insert a non-note event in the Event List view:*

- a. Select the event you want the *non-note* event to follow.
- b. Press the **New** button.

The **New Event** window will open.

- c. Use the Event Type menu to select the event to be added.

NOTE: Some events, such as Control Change and Meta Event, have Subtype event listings. Choose one if applicable.

- d. Press **OK**.
  - Program Changes

Program Change inserts a MIDI event that changes the instrument playback for a given channel / voice.

*To insert a Program Change of the voice/channel in Create New Event:*

- a. Program Change is the default New Event, so simply press **OK**.

The selected Program Change will be inserted into the Event List.

- b. Use the **Voice** pull-down menu to designate the voice to which the Program Change applies.
- c. Use the **Other** pull-down menu to select a new instrument.
  - Control Changes

Control Changes send adjustable parameters to your selected MIDI device i.e., vibrato, hold, volume, pan, effects, etc. You can add specific changes to these controls from within SmartScore's Event List. To find out more about what each control change will do, refer to the user's manual of your MIDI device.

- Meta Events

Meta Events are MIDI file instructions written to the MIDI file. They provide information such as file and track headers, SMPTE code, tempo, key and time signatures, etc. and can be added to any MIDI file using SmartScore's Event List

## 10.6 Playback Console



The Playback Console is available in Overview and Piano Roll views and allows for detailed viewing and control of playback and provides real-time editing of the active MIDI file. Push MIDI in the Navigator and select Piano Roll or Overview.

Push the *Playback Console* button in the Toolbar or choose **Real-time > Playback Console (Ctrl +9 Win / Cmnd+9 Mac)** to open the Playback Console.

NOTE: The console can act as a “window shade”. To shrink vertically, drag the bottom edge of the console up or down.

## 10.6.1 Adjusting Playback Console Settings

*General;*

- Adjust global playback volume using the **General Volume** slider.
- Adjust channel volumes using individual **Volume** sliders.
- Use **Pan** to adjust stereo balance for each channel.
- **Default** resets all MIDI tracks to their original settings.
- The **Close** button will close the Playback Console.
- **Mute** any voice while all others continue to play or **Solo** a single voice for playback.
- Change the MIDI **Instrument** or **Channel** of any voice.

*To play back at a given point in the file;*

- Use the **Measure / Beat** slider and scroll to the desired measure and beat in the score.

*To select the MIDI output device;*

- Use the **Port** pull-down selector.

*To transpose playback globally;*

- Use the **General Transposition** pull-down selector.

*To transpose an individual track / voice;*

- Use the **Transposition** pull-down selector in any track / voice.

## 10.7 Display Controls

### 10.7.1 Time

*To choose whether the timing of MIDI note events is displayed by Measure: Beat: Tick or by Tick Number;*

- Go to the **Options** menu and select **Time Format**.
- Choose by *Measure: Beat: Tick* or by *Tick Number*.

### 10.7.2 Velocity

*To choose whether the velocity of MIDI note events is displayed with absolute numbers (0-127) or as percentages;*

- Go to **Velocity Format** under the **Options** menu.
- Choose by *Value (0-127)* or *Percent*.

## 10.8 MIDI Recording

### 10.8.1 Recording Options

*No MIDI  
Recording*

To activate the Record mode and adjust the recording options choose Record from the Realtime menu.



- Synchro Start

Recording is synchronized to start with the first MIDI note played. To “un-synchronize” the start of recording with the first played MIDI event uncheck **Synchro Start** from the **Realtime** menu OR choose the **Metronome Settings** listed under the **Options** menu and uncheck **Synchro On**.

- **Thru**

Sends new MIDI events to the selected MIDI output device. The active Piano Roll determines the parameters of the MIDI Thru sound. If no Piano Roll is open, MIDI Channel 1 is used.

### 10.8.2 Metronome

The Metronome is on by default. The metronome is useful in keeping time while recording and as a “count-in” tool to mark the beginning of the recording session.

Sometimes, you may want to record “freely”... that is, you simply want to capture a performance in MIDI without worrying about timing or about trying to convert the performance into notation. For this purpose, you will want to turn the metronome off. To make the metronome inactive during recording, uncheck **Metronome** from the **Realtime** menu OR choose the **Metronome Settings** listed under the **Options** menu and uncheck **Metronome On**.

To make changes to SmartScore's metronome;

- Choose **Metronome Settings** from the **Options** menu. The Metronome Settings window will open.

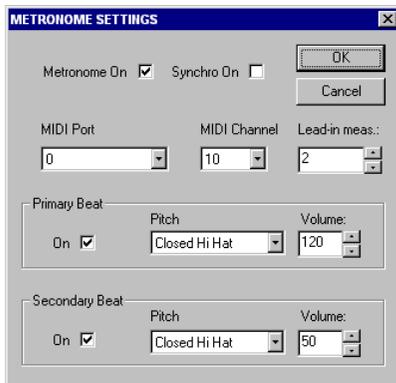


FIGURE 10 - 24: Metronome Settings

**NOTE:** The **Metronome On** check box must be selected for the metronome to sound during recording. To record without a metronome uncheck the Metronome On box.

With **Synchro On**, SmartScore will synchronize the start of recording with the first played MIDI event.

Select which **MIDI Port** the metronome will play through.

Choose the metronome's **MIDI Channel**.

**NOTE:** The de facto drum channel, MIDI Channel 10, is the default channel. But you can change it if you wish.

Determine the number of **Lead-in Measures** that will play prior to the start of recording. The metronome will click at each baseline beat (derived from the time signature) for as many measures as you choose.

The **Primary Beat** (down beat) will sound when its **On** check box is selected. The **Pitch** pull-down menu displays all General MIDI drum sounds. Use the **Volume** scroll box to increase or decrease the volume of the Primary Beat. The default accents the Primary Beat.

The **Secondary Beat** will sound when it **On** check box is selected. The **Pitch** pull-down menu displays all General MIDI drum sounds. Use the **Volume** scroll box to increase or decrease the volume of the Secondary Beat.

### 10.8.3 Snap to

MIDI recording is very strict. Any fluctuation in timing or speed may result in strange or even useless notation. To prevent this, you can apply quantization to your performance. Select **Snap to** from the **Options** menu prior to recording. Choose the smallest rhythmic value that you think you can accurately play while recording. The resulting MIDI events will be justified, each event beginning at the nearest selected rhythmic timing mark.

You can reset start times of selected events to the nearest value set in **Options > Snap to** will also reset start times of all selected MIDI events and will fix the increment at which selected MIDI events can be moved, when using the mouse or arrow keys to move events horizontally.

### 10.8.4 Recording New Tracks / Voices

*To Record a new track to a MIDI file,*

- a. Select **Record** from the **Realtime** menu OR press the Record button in the Playback Console. The New View window will open if any MIDI data already exists in an active file.

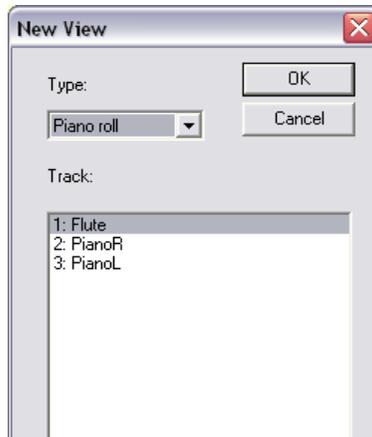


FIGURE 10 - 25: Selecting Track to Record

- b. Select an existing track to record a new voice within the same track.

**NOTE:** The new MIDI data will be added to the existing track without overwriting any material.

- c. Select **New Track** to record a brand new MIDI track.

NOTE: A Piano Roll will open for the selected track. A Piano Roll must be open to record in SmartScore. A new voice and MIDI channel will automatically be created when recording into any track.

- d. Use the Playback Console to assign the MIDI parameters for the new track / voice.
- e. Press the spacebar or select **Play** from the **Realtime** menu, or press the Play button in the Playback Console to start recording at measure 1, unless a Punch In point has been set (see "Setting Punch In and Punch Out points" below).

*While recording:*

- **Pause** (spacebar) will temporarily halt recording.
- **Play** button (spacebar) will resume recording the same track / voice
- **Stop** will end the current recording session. SmartScore will return to the standard MIDI editing environment.

### 10.8.5 External Timer

- To run SmartScore's MIDI recording from an external timer, select **External Timer** from the **Realtime** menu.

### 10.8.6 Setting Punch In and Punch Out points

To set Punch In and Punch Out points for recording, double click any measure number in an Overview or Piano Roll. The Measure Settings window will open.

- Check **Punch In** to start recording at the beginning of this measure.
- Check **Punch Out** to set this measure as the last measure for recording.

The Punch In and Out points are marked with red triangles in the Overview and Piano Roll displays.

## 10.9 Step Time Recording

Recording a "live" MIDI performance to a metronome may be very useful to an accomplished keyboardist, but many of us do not have the timing skills required to record a performance meaningful enough for conversion to notation. Even if using "Snap to" quantization will result in note positions that are offset with a mix of strange note values and, usually, many rests. A logical alternative to live recording is **Step Time Recording**. Using this method, you will be able to quickly select exact note durations as well as "skips" (rests) from the number pad of your computer keyboard. With your other hand, enter notes and chords from your MIDI keyboard or MIDI instrument.

To activate Step Time Recording,

- Make sure your MIDI keyboard or MIDI instrument is properly connected to your computer and that it or its interface is selected under **Input** in the **MIDI Devices** window (See "MIDI Devices", Section 10.3.3, on page 190 for more.)
- From the **Realtime** menu, select **Step Time Record**.
- Select a track. The default is set to "New Track". If you wish to record onto an existing MIDI track, select that track in the **New View** window.
- Press **OK**.
- A floating window representing the computer keyboard number pad and associated note durations appears. **Record** is now staged.

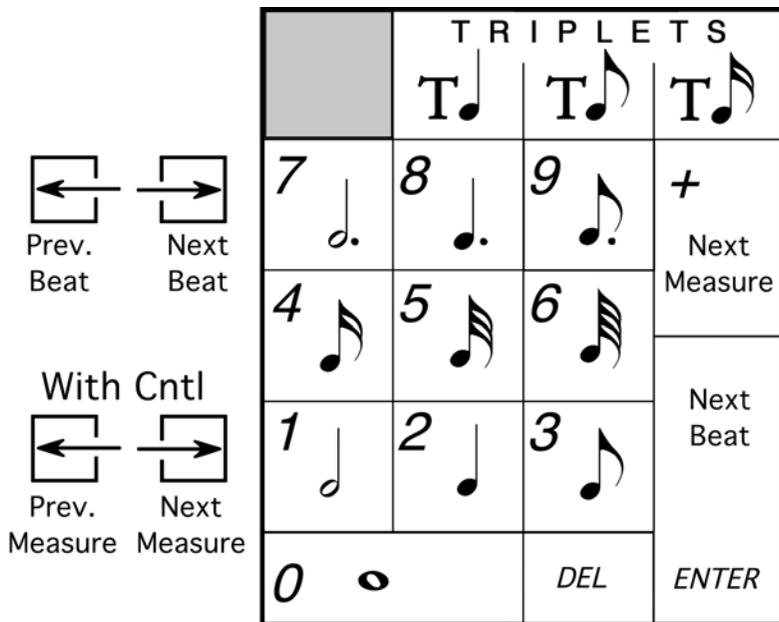


FIGURE 10 - 26: Step Time recording (Number Keypad)

- Click on a note value or control button in the floating key pad window. Or, you may select the corresponding value / control function using the numerical keypad on your computer keyboard.
- Press the **Play** button of the Mini Console. Recording will begin at Measure 1.

- h. Press a note or chord on your MIDI instrument. Notes of the selected value will insert. The next note you enter will begin at the same point the last note ended. e.g. In 4/4 time with quarter note selected, hitting a note four times will fill up one measure.
- i. To insert a rest, choose a note value and hit Enter or right arrow.

## 10.10 Virtual Drum Kit

In any MIDI view, you can record your own drum tracks onto existing tracks using nothing more than your computer keyboard. To activate Virtual Drums, go to the **Realtime** menu and select **Virtual Drum Kit**. See "Virtual Drum Kit", Section 9.6, on page 185 for more details.

## 10.11 Playback Considerations after MIDI Editing

If you return to the ENF view after editing in the MIDI environment, playback will retain changes made in MIDI views until the ENF display is updated with "MIDI Refresh". If notation is subsequently edited in ENF or if MIDI Refresh is selected, you will be given a choice of A) Keeping current MIDI playback B) Refreshing ENF and clearing previous changes made in MIDI or C) Saving the current playback as a MIDI file.

## 10.12 MIDI to ENF

SmartScore accepts any Standard MIDI file and converts it to an ENF file. Turn to "MIDI to ENF", Section 7.12 for details.

## 10.13 Saving MIDI Files

When saving a MIDI file, remember that you are not saving a music notation file. The more "humanized" the MIDI file sounds, the less likely it will appear correctly when imported into a music notation application, such as SmartScore. Saving SmartScore files derived from scanning will normally give reasonably good results because the music is already "quantized" into discreet start and stop times.

To save a SmartScore MIDI file,

- a. Select **FILE > Save As**, click the "**Save as Type**" pull down menu and select either **MIDI Type 0** (Single Track/Multiple Channels) or **MIDI Type 1** (Multiple Tracks / Multiple Channels).
- b. Push the Save button. A window appears saying the following:

Articulations such as slurs, staccatos and legatos will result in a MIDI file that will not import properly into a notation program. Choose whether you want your MIDI file for importing into a notation program or for playback only.

- c. Choose **Remove** or **Keep Articulations** according to your need.

## 10.14 Recording to Audio (Save as file / Burn to CD)

Using the CD Writer feature, you will be able to record one or more ENF (MIDI playback) performances as a audio file or burn to a playable in your car, home stereo, etc. In order to burn to CD, it will be necessary to have a CD-R (CD Writable) device installed and connected to your system.

NOTE: Some external CD/DVD-R devices may no respond to the Writing “burn” command. In this case, you should record to .WAV file and use dedicated CD burning software to record CD audio.

NOTE: For best results and sound quality, it is recommended that you use the Aria player for playback whenever saving to an audio file or burning audio to CD.

*To record ENF or MIDI files and burn them to audio CD,*



- a. Push the CD Burn icon at the bottom of the Navigator or choose .

Push “Add Files” and select one or more ENF or go to FILE > CD Writer. MIDI files to be recorded to CD.

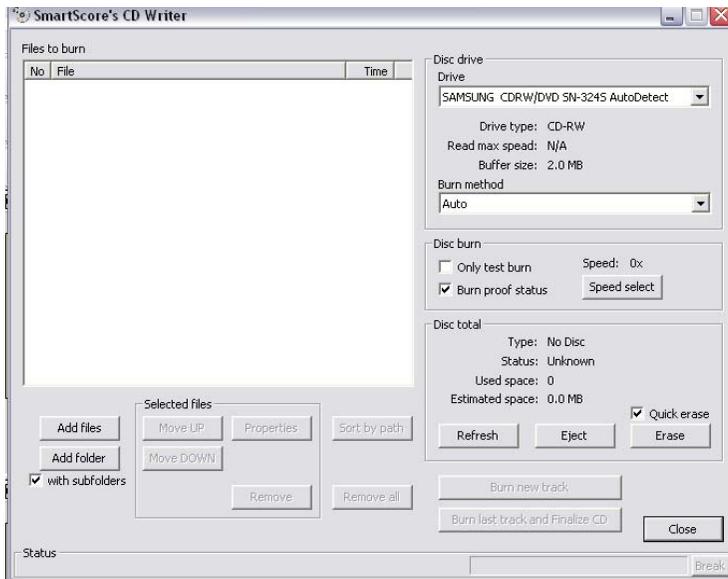


FIGURE 10 - 27: Audio CD Writer window

- b. Each selected file must undergo a conversion to an audio format. (.WAV is the default). After converting, the selected file(s) will appear in the “**Files to Burn**” list as an audio.  
Files may be reordered using the “**Move Up**” or “**Move Down**” buttons. They may be removed from the list separately or all together with “**Remove**” or “**Remove All**” buttons.
- c. Insert an unused writable CD (CD-R) into your CD/DVD tray. **Burn Method = Auto**. Change to another method if you have trouble.
- d. Push “**Burn Last Track and Finalize CD**” to record and finalize your ENF files to DVD. All selected files will record on a single CD track. To record individual tracks, use “**Burn New Track**” as described below.

NOTE: “Finalizing” a DVD is necessary before a can be played back. Once Finalize is applied, you will not be able to record anything more to the CD.

- e. If you wish to continue burning new selections without finalizing the CD, push “**Burn new track**”. Each set of converted files in the “**Files to Burn**” list will record to one track. Select “**Burn Last Track and Finalize CD**” to record last track and finalize the CD.

## 11.1 Preferences

Default ENF display characteristics can be changed. From the **EDIT** menu.

Select **Document Preferences** or **Program Preferences** depending on whether it is document or program-dependant.

### 11.1.1 Document Preferences

- **Text symbols**

Reset default font size and type for text symbols such as triplets, dynamics and expression marks. For text and lyric defaults including part names, push the “Text Styles” button. Push **Apply** to change. See "Adding and changing styles of Text and Lyrics", Section 8.2.2, on page 165.

- **Systems**

Reset display characteristics for systems including part names, measure numbers, lyric display, clef visibility and printing, cross-staff pointer lines and constraining system scrolling when the score is reformatted.

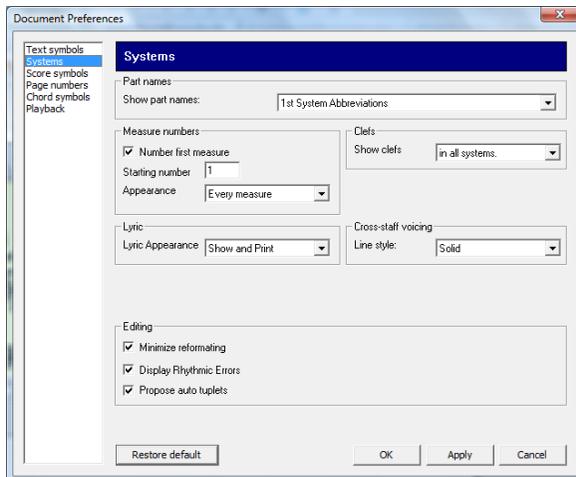


FIGURE 11 - 1: Document Preferences > Systems

- Select how to display **part names**: Choose how to abbreviate part names and whether to show or don't show part names.
- Change options for showing **measure numbers**.
- Change whether or not to **display clefs** in every system.
- Select whether to show and/or print **lyrics**.
- Change the line style for **cross-staff voicing**.
- Editing Defaults (may be turned off):
  - Minimize **symbol repositioning** when reformatting music.
  - Display **rhythmic errors** (highlight measures in red).
  - Suggest **Auto-tuplets** after the same rhythmic grouping is inserted more than twice.

- **Score symbols**

Change display options for:

- Triplet bracketing (square, arc, none)
- Note overlap control (overlap voices or offset noteheads)
- Rehearsal symbol display (numbers or letters).

- **Page number**

- Change display options for page number display, visibility and position on the page.

- **Chord symbols**

Change display options for chord symbols and fretboard font type, size and color, fretboard size scaling and how chord symbols will be displayed:

- Show both chord name and guitar fretboard symbols.
- Show only guitar fretboards.
- Show only chord names.
- Show neither chord nor fretboard symbols.
- **Long Minor** will display “min” instead of “m” for the word “minor”.

- **Playback**

Change GLOBAL playback characteristics:

- Grace notes: On the beat (acciacitura) / Before the beat
- Lock to Time Signature: Lock (Default) / Play as written
- Randomizer: Place check in checkbox to apply. Adjust sliders to increase/decrease random changes to start time and note velocities.

## 11.1.2 Program Preferences

- **User Interface**

Control tool palette behavior, turn display of active staff and margins off and on and show Task Window at startup. Reset default windows settings including post-recognition pop-up notifications.

- **Page type**

Reset default page size and orientation.

- **Units and Zoom**

Reset default ruler display units and reset zoom - screen size ratios.

- **Tablature**

- Select whether or not to print note value symbols.
- Change the length of time to enter fret number values.

- **Color settings**

Reset color properties of notes and other symbols.

- **MIDI channel color**

Reset the colors displayed for MIDI channels 1-16

- **Karaoke settings**

Control appearance during playback including scroll and ball behavior as well as background and lyric colors. These options are also available in Karaoke mode under the **Options** menu.

- **Autosave**

Reset default Autosave rules.

- Every  $n$  minutes - even if no editing takes place.
- Every  $n$  actions - based on number of editing actions, e.g. Inserting, Changing, Deleting, etc.
- What is first - based on which is first; the number of minutes selected or the number of actions performed.
- Never - deactivates Auto Save of the ENF file.

- **Notifications**

Control whether or not to display certain warning and caution notices.

- **MusicXML**

Change default options for saving ENF to Music XML files.

- **ENF - PDF (Win Only)**

Select alternative PDF creation application. These 3rd-party applications may redirect your browser to the publisher's website for upgrading or other offers when launched.

- **Systems**

See "Systems" under "Document Preferences" on page 214.

- **Score Symbols**

See "Score symbols" under "Document Preferences" on page 214.

- **Page Number**

See "Page number" under "Document Preferences" on page 214.

## 11.2 ENF EDITOR > FILE Menu

### 11.2.1 New ENF / New MID

Select between a new ENF or a new MIDI. Choosing New ENF will open the New SmartScore Document window. Select a Template or use Custom to create a unique score. Choosing New MIDI will open a blank MIDI Overview and Piano Roll for MIDI input.



### 11.2.2 Open (Ctrl +O Win / Cmnd+O)

Opens File Selection dialog box and lists saved files. A selected file will be loaded into memory and will display on the screen.

### 11.2.3 Close (Cmnd+W)

Closes active ENF document. If changes have been made, a Save As dialog box will open.

### 11.2.4 Save (Ctrl +S / Cmnd+S for Mac)



This will save an open SmartScore document to the same drive the file was opened from. The original name remains unchanged. If ENF and Image are displayed, only the ENF file is saved.

### 11.2.5 Save As

You can save files in several file formats other than SmartScore's native ENF format. These include MIDI (.MID), NIFF and MusicXML (.XML) file.

- a. Go to **Save As**.
- b. In the File type/Format window, choose a format to save the file.
- c. Browse to another directory and change the name if necessary.
- d. Press **OK**. The file will be saved in the last directory used to "save".

NOTE: Use **Save (Ctrl +S /Cmnd+S)** to update the current ENF file.

**NOTE:** When saving ENF to MIDI files, a dialog box will open to explain that articulations such as slurs, staccatos and tenutos will create MIDI events that are not quantized. You will be given a choice to save the MIDI files with articulations removed or kept. For the purpose of playback only, it is recommended that articulations be kept. If it is recommended that articulations be removed if MIDI files are to be imported into other notation-based programs.

### **11.2.6 Save & Open XML in Finale (Toolbar button)**

Use this function, also found in the lower Toolbar, to launch Finale and import the current ENF file (saved as an XML file).

### **11.2.7 Save as PDF**

This opens file browser and saves current active ENF file as an Adobe<sup>®</sup> Acrobat<sup>®</sup> PDF format file. (Windows requires PDF 995 from installer)

### **11.2.8 Scan Music**



- **Acquire:** Initiates scanning. Same as Scan in Navigator.
- **Select Scanner:** Opens list of available TWAIN drivers to select.
- **Choose Interface:**

> **SmartScore's** = selects the SmartScore scanning interface. Refer to "Selecting your scanner driver in SmartScore (Windows only)", Section 3.1.2 for details.

> **Your Scanner's** = selects scanning software from your scanner.



### **11.2.9 Recognize**

This initiates the recognition sequence for recognition of pre-scanned images. See "Scanning in Macintosh<sup>®</sup>", Section 3.2, on page 19 for details.



### **11.2.10 Page Setup**

This opens the document layout control panel. See "Custom document layouts", Section 6.3.5, on page 96 for details.



- **Print (Ctrl+P / Cmnd+P)**  
Print out your score.



### **11.2.11 Print Preview**

Check for proper page layouts. Adjust individual page margins using green tabs. Also seen in Page Setup view.

## 11.2.12 Most recently opened ENF files

The last four ENF files are listed and may be opened by clicking their names.

## 11.2.13 Exit

Saves and closes all open ENF files and closes SmartScore.

## 11.3 ENF EDITOR > EDIT Menu

### 11.3.1 Undo (Ctrl +Z / Cmnd+Z)



Reverses the last action you performed. SmartScore has ninety-nine layers of Undo.

### 11.3.2 Redo (Ctrl +Y / Cmnd+Y)



Reapplies the last action that has most recently been Undone.

### 11.3.3 Cut (Ctrl+X / Cmnd+X)

*To view selected objects from the score and place them on the clipboard,*



a. Hit “O” key or choose the **Select** tool from the Toolbar.

b. Click and drag a box with the cursor until objects you wish to cut (and store to the clipboard) are highlighted orange.



c. Press the **Cut** button in the Toolbar, hit **Ctrl + X / Cmnd + X** or select **Cut** from the menu.

### 11.3.4 Copy

*To copy selected objects for pasting elsewhere in the score,*



a. Activate the **Select** tool then click and drag a box to select a region of interest.

b. Press **Ctrl +C / Cmnd+C** or go to **Copy**.

a. To copy selected region of the page to the clipboard for pasting as a bitmap image into another program, activate the **Select** tool and drag a region with the right mouse button (**Alt + click** for *Mac*).



*To copy a full page:*

a. **Ctrl + A / Cmnd + C** (Select All) then **Ctrl + C / Cmnd + C** (Copy).

b. Open 3rd-party application, position cursor and **Ctrl + V/Cmnd+ V** (Paste).

### 11.3.5 Paste (Ctrl +V / Cmnd+V)

*To paste the contents of the clipboard into an ENF file,*



- Select Paste (Ctrl +V / Cmnd+V) from the Edit menu and click anywhere in the score. The contents of the clipboard will be added to the score and will not replace any existing notes.
- Paste Replace (Ctrl+R or Cmnd+R)

*To paste the copied material into an ENF file and replace existing notation,*

#### 11.3.5a Paste Replace

Select Paste Replace from the Edit menu (Ctrl+R or Cmnd+R) and click anywhere in the score. Use **Paste Replace** to quickly replace a complex passage that was poorly recognized with an identical passage that is correct.

#### 11.3.5b Merging and Inserting (Paste option)

A special paste mode becomes available after selecting and copying symbols or entire system segments. Clicking on the beginning barline of the section to be altered will open the following dialog box:.

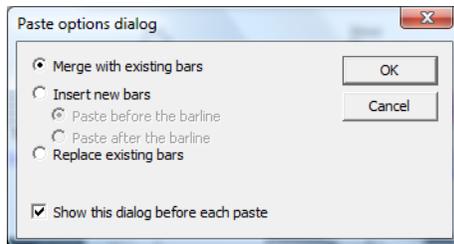


FIGURE 11 - 2: Paste Option Dialog (Barline click)

- Merge with existing bars: Copied symbols will be added to current measures.
- Insert new bars: Copied measures will be inserted and follow-on measures will be rolled forward.
- Replace existing barlines: This choice will replace existing measures (identical to Paste Replace).



- **Delete**

In this mode, clicking on objects that are moused over (and highlight yellow) are deleted.

### **11.3.6 Select All (Ctrl+A or Cmnd+A)**

*To select all symbols on the current page for global editing functions such as split voices (Section 4.5.2), flip stems (Section 7.7.5) and ungluing joined voices (Section 7.5.7a):*

Choose **Select All** from the **Edit** menu (**Ctrl+A** or **Cmnd+A**).

### **11.3.7 System Manager (Ctrl+M or Cmnd+M)**

Refer to "System Manager", Section 7.4.

### **11.3.8 Score Properties**

Refer to "Score Properties", Section 7.3

### **11.3.9 Score Structure**

This special environment is used to perform useful functions such as creating a conductor's score from different parts and for isolating or joining parts and voices. For detailed discussion on using this powerful feature, turn to "Extracting parts in Score Structure", Section 6.5.2.

### **11.3.10 Format Score**

Refer to "Edit > Format Score", Section 6.4

### **11.3.11 Staff Spacing**

Refer to "Adjusting measures", Section 6.1.2 for details.

### **11.3.12 Text Styles**

Refer to ".To modify font styles of text fields and lyric blocks,", Section for more details.

### **11.3.13 Part Linking (Ctrl+L or Cmnd+L) (Collapsing and expanding systems)**

Many printed scores "collapse" or "optimize" systems to show only actively playing parts. Similarly, instruments that appear in one part may split into two or more parts anywhere in the score causing systems to "expand" in size. SmartScore automatically senses expanding systems when, for example, a piano solo introduction precedes a vocal/piano arrangement. Expanding and collapsing parts are easily linked or re-linked in a simple-to-use

environment called Part Linking. Part Linking is also used when merging staves with brackets that were cut off. Turn to "Re-linking parts", Section 4.14 for details on this feature.

### 11.3.14 Instruments Templates

Refer to "Instrument Templates", Section 4.10.2.

### 11.3.15 Bracketing (Ctrl+B or Cmnd+B)

Refer to "Bracketing", Section 8.4.3.

### 11.3.16 Add Empty Pages

Use to add new pages. Also found in Status Bar (lower right corner).

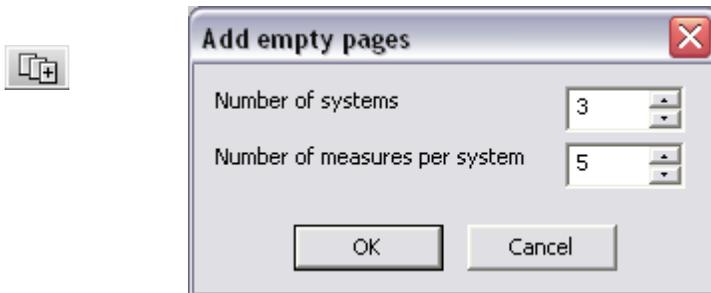


FIGURE 11 - 3: Add Empty Page window

### 11.3.17 Unify Signatures (U)

Refer to "Unify Score ("U")", Section 7.8.4.

### 11.3.18 Restore Default Voices (Ctrl + U)

Use this feature to revert a selected set of notes within a measure to their default voice / color assignment. Useful if voice / color assignments become confused after repeated over-riding of voices.

### 11.3.19 Score Header

Refer to "Score Header", Section 8.4.4.

### 11.3.20 Default Tempo

*To set the default tempo,*

- Select desired *Beats per Minute* from the horizontal slider.
- Choose a base note **Tempo Value** (4/4 default = quarter note).

- c. Check the **Metronome Mark Visibility** box to display the Metronome Mark in the ENF document in the first measure.

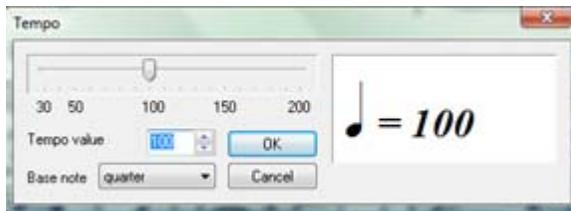


FIGURE 11 - 4: Default Tempo window

Refer to "Tempo Markings", Section 7.6.5 for entering change-of-tempo (metronome) markings.



### 11.3.21 Automatic Drum Track

Opens the “assign drum pattern” window. See "Add drum tracks", Section 4.10.5, on page 63 for details on creating automatic drum tracks.



### 11.3.22 Guitar Chord Library

The Guitar Chord library contains preset guitar chords and associated chord symbols. Add, change, delete and store any custom chords. Guitar frets and chord symbols automatically transpose with key transposition. Refer to "Guitar Fret and Chord Symbols", Section 8.3.1 for details.

### 11.3.23 Transpose (Ctrl +T / Cmnd+T)

Transpose your score by key or by clef. Limit to a part, a voice or select a range. Refer to "Transposition", Section 7.2 for details.

### 11.3.24 Edit Mode

- Zoom
- Select tool (Ctrl+O / Cmnd+O)
- Insert / Change - See "Insert mode", Section 5.2.5, on page 79.
- Delete - See "Deleting notes and symbols (“X”)", Section 7.1.3, on page 104.
- Vertical Alignment (Y) - See "Working with Contrapuntal Voices", Section 7.9, on page 148.
- Beam Notes (B) - See *Convert a sequence of flagged notes into one beamed group* under 7.1.5 on page 105.
- Split Voices (H) - See "Voice Splitting (Select + “H”)", Section 4.5.2, on page 45.

- Flip Stems (S) - See "Stem direction (S)", Section 7.7.5, on page 142.
- Delete Selected Ties/ Articulations (G) - See "Select tool ("O")", Section 7.1.4, on page 105.

## 11.4 ENF EDITOR > VIEW Menu

### 11.4.1 Toolbars

- Navigator
- Opens and closes the SmartScore Navigator.
- Main
- Opens and closes Toolbar
- SmartScore
- Opens and closes Toolbar
- Image
- Opens and closes Image Editing Toolbar
- Text and Controllers
- Opens and closes the Toolbar containing control buttons for text and graphical controllers.
- Mini Console
- Opens and closes the Mini playback console in ENF view.
- MIDI Toolbar
- Opens the MIDI Toolbar in the active ENF view.
- Print Preview Toolbar
- Open and closes the Print Preview Toolbar when Print Preview is active.
- Status Bar

Opens and closes Status Bar at the bottom of display. Displays current page, cursor position, image size, zoom, page view type and add page.

### 11.4.2 Palettes

Refer to Section 7.6, "Tool Palettes" for details.

### 11.4.3 Show

#### 11.4.3a Active Staff

When selected, the ENF display to highlight the active staff in black while other staves become grey. The active staff line is the staff that the cursor was last positioned over.



*TIP:* If you find that a certain staff line is stuck “on” regardless of the position of your cursor, it is probably is a result of having “Caps Lock” on. Turning on “Caps Lock” will lock in the active staff line to allow you to move about freely.



*TIP:* If an object does not delete even if it shows itself to be in an active staff, use the Select tool (“O” key) to highlight it and then hit **Delete**. All selected objects will be removed with the Delete key, whether they are in the active staff or not.

### **11.4.3b Error Message**

This selection will highlight measures with suspected rhythmic errors in a pink color. If the total of beats in one or more voices in a measure do not equal the default time signature the measure will highlight pink. It does not necessarily mean the measure is “illegal” or that it will play back incorrectly. There are many accepted conventions that cause this.

### **11.4.3c Part Names**

Select one of several choice to display Part Names along the left-hand side of systems. “Do Not Show” is also an option.

### **11.4.3d Measure Numbers**

This option will display or not display measure numbers in the ENF display.

### **11.4.3e Chord Symbols**

Choose to display chord symbols as guitar fret symbols, text or not at all.

### **11.4.3f Hidden Symbols**

Refer to Section 7.10, "Hidden Symbols" for details.

### **11.4.3g Lyric Show/Don't Show**

Checking this option off will remove the display and printing of lyrics.

## **11.4.4 Associate Image Files**

Synchronization between the ENF and TIFF panes assumes exact ENF correspondence to the original score structure. Synchronization may become lost after systems are inserted, removed or if page margins are changed. Once a system rolls from one page to another, ENF-TIFF synchronization will become lost for all subsequent pages.

To synchronize ENF and TIFF views,

- a. Go to **Associate Image Files...**

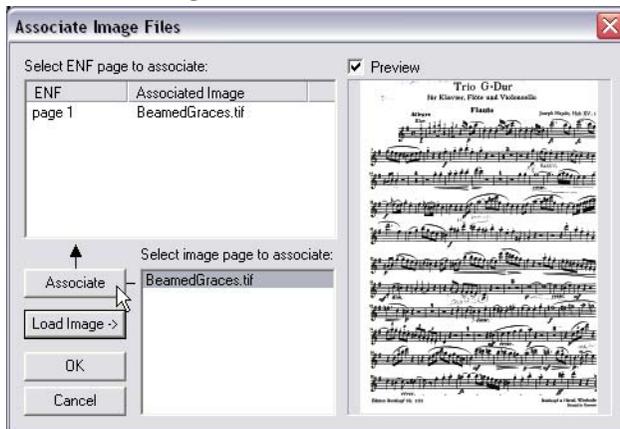


FIGURE 11 - 5: Associate Image File Window

- b. Push **Load Image** to browse and locate the TIF file associated with the open document. Double click to select the image. If the file contains several pages of images, they will appear as xxxP1, xxxP2, xxxP3, etc.
- c. Click to highlight a page in the image-page list. A preview of the page will appear in the view window if *Preview* is checked. Then click on the appropriate ENF page in the list of ENF pages.
- d. Push the **Associate** button to associate the image page with the appropriate ENF page. Continue as necessary.

#### 11.4.5 Image Information

Provides information on the structure and type of the currently displayed image file.

- Next Page
- Displays next page of ENF document
- Previous Page
- Displays previous page of ENF document
- Go to Page (Ctrl +G / Cmnd+G)

Presents a dialog box to select a page number to jump to. Refer to "Paging", Section 5.1.5 for details.

#### **11.4.6 View Mode**

Choose how you want to view pages in the ENF notation display: Horizontal, vertical, facing page (book orientation) or in long view (pageless scrolling format).

#### **11.4.7 Zoom**

Lists available view percentages. Changing zoom will affect both the image and the ENF file simultaneously. Range is from 8% to 400% view scale.

#### **11.4.8 ENF EDITOR > PLAYBACK Menu**

#### **11.4.9 Set Playback Range**

Refer to "Playing back a selected section", Section 4.2.1.

#### **11.4.10 Play / Stop / Rewind**

Used to control playback functions from menu.

#### **11.4.11 Thru**

Sets MIDI device to play "live" without *MIDI Record* on.

#### **11.4.12 Console**

Opens Playback Console (**Ctrl+9 / Cmnd+9**).

#### **11.4.13 Mini Console**

Opens and closes Mini Console Toolbar.

#### **11.4.14 MIDI Devices**

Opens MIDI device dialog box. Select MIDI input and output sources. Refer to "Quick Playback Tricks", Section 4.2 for details.

#### **11.4.15 Swing**

Turns swing playback on or off. Refer to "Swing", Section 4.10.6.

#### **11.4.16 Play as written**

Refer to "Barline Properties (Pickup measures and Codas)", Section 4.9.11.

#### **11.4.17 Graphical Controller**

Refer to "ENF Graphical controllers", Section 4.11.

## 11.5 ENF EDITOR > WINDOW Menu

### 11.5.1 Task Window (Ctrl + W)

- a. Opens the SmartScore task window:



FIGURE 11 - 6: Task Window

### 11.5.2 Scan View

Provides options for the floating zoom window including whether to display ENF or TIFF close-ups in the zoom window and selecting additional zoom views. Refer to "Split-screen and scan view reference views", Section 7.11.1 for details on the floating zoom window.

### 11.5.3 Clone Document

Duplicates and opens currently open ENF file.

### 11.5.4 View Panes

Choose to the screen view that makes sense to you: ENF/TIFF, ENF only or just the .TIF.

### 11.5.5 Split Screen

Activates the ENF / Scan view split control tool.

### 11.5.6 Cascade

Display, overlap and offset all open ENF files.

### 11.5.7 Tile

Display all open windows of all open ENF files with no overlap.

### **11.5.8 Split**

This option activates the “window pane” puller. Use to control the split screen.

### **11.5.9 Overview / Piano Roll / Event List**

Opens MIDI view window and displays the selected MIDI environment, Overview, Piano Roll or Event List. See "MIDI Views", Section 10.1, on page 187 for more details.

### **11.5.10 Karaoke**

Opens the Karaoke view window. See "Karaoke View", Section 4.10.1, on page 61 for more details.

### **11.5.11 Reset Tools and Palettes (F1)**

Resets tool palettes and toolbars to their default (program launch) positions and maximizes the ENF display.

### **11.5.12 New MIDI View (Ctrl +I / Cmnd+I)**

Opens New MIDI View dialog box. Select type of MIDI view.

- Overview - Displays all staves as MIDI tracks.
- Piano Roll - Displays selected stave as MIDI track.

Event List - Displays MIDI events of selected staff line.

## **11.6 ENF EDITOR > HELP Menu**

### **11.6.1 SmartScore Manual (PDF)**

In DVD versions, this selection will open the file, *SSManual.pdf*. This file is the full *Using SmartScore 5* manual in Adobe Acrobat format. It is located in the SmartScore directory and is opened by Adobe Acrobat.

In download versions, this selection will attempt to open an Internet connection and begin downloading of the file, *SSManual.pdf* from the Musitek website. If the file is moved to the SmartScore directory, the local file will open when the SmartScore Manual (PDF) is selection is made again.

### **11.6.2 Online Help**

This selection will attempt to launch your Internet browser and connect to a special interactive help system online at [musitek.com](http://musitek.com). The Online Help system is fully interactive and contains index links, table of contents links and text hyperlinks to related subjects.

### **11.6.3 Check for Updates**

Opens Internet browser and attempts to locate the SmartScore online updates page at: <http://www.musitek.com/updates.html>

### **11.6.4 Registration**

Opens Internet browser and attempts to locate the Musitek online registration page at: <http://www.musitek.com/registration.html>

### **11.6.5 About SmartScore X2**

Displays version / update number. Pushing the graphic icon reveals author / programming information.

## **11.7 MIDI EDITOR > FILE Menu**

### **11.7.1 New**

Select between a new ENF or a new MIDI. Choosing New ENF will open the New SmartScore Document window. Select a Template or use Custom to create a unique score. Choosing New MIDI will open a blank MIDI Overview and Piano Roll for MIDI input.

### **11.7.2 Open (Ctrl +O / Cmnd+O)**

Opens File Selection dialog box and lists saved files. A selected file will be loaded into memory and will display on the screen.

### **11.7.3 Close - (Cmnd+W Mac)**

Closes all MIDI views. If any changes were made to the MIDI file, option to Save MIDI file. Return to main SmartScore window.

### **11.7.4 Save (Ctrl +S / Cmnd+S)**

Writes currently displayed file to the hard disk.

### **11.7.5 Save As**

Opens Windows File Selection dialog box

Save processed or modified MIDI files to hard disk following MIDI Recording or Editing procedures.

Use to save selected files to directory other than the working directory

### **11.7.6 Show Task Window (Ctrl + W)**

Opens SmartScore Task Window.

### **11.7.7 DVD Writer**

Opens DVD Writer / Burn window. See "Recording to Audio (Save as file / Burn to CD)", Section 10.14, on page 212.

### **11.7.8 Recent (1,2,3, or 4)**

Automatically loads one of the last four files accessed by SmartScore.

### **11.7.9 Exit/ Quit- (Cmnd+Q)**

Exit SmartScore. Save current file. Go to Windows main desktop.

### **11.7.10 MIDI EDITOR > EDIT Menu**

### **11.7.11 Undo (Ctrl +Z / Cmnd+Z)**

Reverses the last action you performed. SmartScore has ninety-nine layers of Undo.

### **11.7.12 Redo (Ctrl +Y / Cmnd+Y)**

Reapplies the last action that has been Undone.

### **11.7.13 Select**

Opens the Select window for defined note selection.

### **11.7.14 Select All (Ctrl +A / Cmnd+A)**

Selects all MIDI events in every track.

### **11.7.15 Cut (Ctrl +X / Cmnd+X)**

Removes the highlighted notes from the score and places them in the clipboard.

### **11.7.16 Copy (Ctrl +C Win / Cmnd+C Mac)**

Places selected notes on the clipboard without removing them from the score.

### **11.7.17 Paste (Ctrl +V / Cmnd+V)**

Insert the contents of the clipboard back into the score without deleting the existing notes.

### **11.7.18 Paste Special**

Opens the Paste Special window. The Paste Special window offers several options for pasting the contents of the clipboard back into the music.

### **11.7.19 Delete (Del)**

Deletes the selected section from the MIDI file.

### **11.7.20 Delete Track**

Deletes the currently displayed MIDI track.

### **11.7.21 Program Change (Piano Roll only)**

Opens the Change Instrument window. Insert a change to a new MIDI patch.

### **11.7.22 Velocity/ Duration**

Opens the Velocity and Duration window. Adjust the Velocity and/ or Duration of the selected MIDI events.

### **11.7.23 Create Automatic Drum Pattern**

If you wish to convert a MIDI drum pattern and add it to the SmartScore drum pattern library, load the MIDI drum pattern file and select this option. For more information, see "Adding custom drum patterns from ENF", Section 9.5.2, on page 184.

### **11.7.24 Convert MIDI to ENF**

Converts MIDI data in the currently open file to ENF notation.

### **11.7.25 MIDI EDITION > VIEW Menu**

### **11.7.26 Navigator**

Opens and closes the SmartScore Navigator.

### **11.7.27 Toolbar**

Opens and closes Toolbar.

### **11.7.28 Image Toolbar**

Opens and closes Image Editing Toolbar.

### **11.7.29 Mini Console**

Opens Mini Console transport control.

### **11.7.30 MIDI Toolbar**

Opens the MIDI Toolbar.

### **11.7.31 Synchronize**

Synchronizes measure sizes in all MIDI views to that of current MIDI view. All horizontal resizing is synchronized between all MIDI views.

### **11.7.32 Show Actual Playback**

When selected, all MIDI events (including articulations such as trills and tremolos) are visible in the Piano Roll view. When selected, MIDI events cannot be edited (behavior of articulations is controlled with Properties tool in the ENF view. Turn off to edit MIDI events.

## **11.8 MIDI EDITION > OPTIONS Menu**

### **11.8.1 Snap to (Quantization)**

Quantities selected MIDI “Note On” events to the nearest “tick” specified. Also determines default quantization value for MIDI recording and for horizontal nudging of selected MIDI events by mouse dragging or by use of the arrow keys. Quantization values range from 32nd triplet to whole note.

### **11.8.2 File Settings**

Opens Sequence Settings window. Shows the MIDI header information including: tempo, time base, time signature, key, and MIDI instrument.

### **11.8.3 Track (not in Overview)**

Opens Track Properties dialog box. Select a different track view, delete, duplicate, rename, or transpose the selected track.

### **11.8.4 MIDI Devices**

Opens MIDI device dialog box. Select MIDI input and output sources.

### **11.8.5 Instrument Settings**

Opens Instrument Settings dialog box. Allows for selection of Port, Bank, and MIDI channel assignment for Instrument and Drum sources.

### **11.8.6 Metronome Settings**

Opens Metronome Settings dialog box. Allows for selection of Port, MIDI Channel, number of lead in measures, MIDI sound and volume for Primary and Secondary beats.

### **11.8.7 Shuttle On**

Activate/ deactivate SmartScore’s shuttle tool.

## **11.9 MIDI PLAYBACK Menu**

### **11.9.1 Set Playback Range**

Opens Set MIDI Play Range dialog window.

### **11.9.2 Play/ Pause “Spacebar”**

Begins/ pauses/ resumes playback of current MIDI file. In Record Mode will start and pause MIDI recording.

### **11.9.3 Stop**

Stops playback or recording of current MIDI file.

### **11.9.4 Rewind “,” (comma)**

Rewinds to beginning of Set Playback Range.

### **11.9.5 Record**

Check to activate MIDI Record mode

### **11.9.6 External Timer**

Set recording to begin from an external signal.

### **11.9.7 Synchro Start**

Active only in Record Mode, check to synchronize start of MIDI recording with first note played on MIDI keyboard.

### **11.9.8 Thru**

Allows MIDI input to sound without having to be in Record mode.

### **11.9.9 Metronome**

Activates/ deactivates Metronome in recording

### **11.9.10 Playback Console (Ctrl + 9 / Cmnd+9)**

Opens the Playback Console.

### **11.9.11 MIDI WINDOW Menu**

See "ENF EDITOR > WINDOW Menu", Section 11.5, on page 228.

### **11.9.12 Image Realtime Menu**

- **Realtime > Thru**

Allows MIDI input to sound while recording.

- **Realtime > MIDI Devices**

Opens MIDI Device window.

## **11.10 IMAGE EDITOR> FILE Menu**

### **11.10.1 New**

Select between a new ENF or a new MIDI. Choosing New ENF will open the New Smart-Score Document window. Select a Template or use Custom to create a unique score. Choosing New MIDI will open a blank MIDI Overview and Piano Roll for MIDI input.

### **11.10.2 Open (Ctrl +O / Cmnd+O)**

Opens File Selection dialog box and lists saved files. A selected file will be loaded into memory and will display on the screen.

### **11.10.3 Save (Ctrl +S / Cmnd+T)**

Writes currently displayed file to the hard disk.

### **11.10.4 Save As**

Opens Windows File Selection dialog box

Save processed or modified Image files to hard disk following Scanning and Editing. Use to save selected files to directory other than the working directory.

### **11.10.5 Save As PDF**

Saves currently open TIFF image as a PDF file (Windows requires PDF 995 from installer).

### **11.10.6 Scan Music**

Selects scanner or initiates scanner to acquire image.

### **11.10.7 Recognition**

Initiates Recognition to begin processing saved image file(s).

### **11.10.8 Print (Ctrl +P Win / Cmnd+P Mac)**

Initiates Windows Print Monitor. Current Image file is output to default printer from selected printer port.

### **11.10.9 CD Writer**

Opens audio CD Writer / Burn window. See "Recording to Audio (Save as file / Burn to CD)", Section 10.14, on page 212.

### **11.10.10 Recent (1,2,3, or 4)**

Automatically loads one of the last four files accessed by SmartScore (Win). Select any recent files by type (Mac)

### **11.10.11 Exit/ Quit (Cmnd+Q *Mac*)**

Exit SmartScore. Save current file. Go to Windows main desktop.

## **11.11 IMAGE EDITOR > EDIT Menu**

### **11.11.1 Undo (Ctrl +Z / Cmnd+Z)**

Reverses the last action you performed. SmartScore has ninety-nine layers of Undo.

### **11.11.2 Redo (Ctrl +Y / Cmnd+Y)**

Reapplies the last action that has been Undone.

### **11.11.3 Cut (Ctrl +X / Cmnd+X)**

Removes the selected section from the image file and places it on the clipboard

### **11.11.4 Copy (Ctrl +C / Cmnd+C)**

Places selected section on the clipboard without removing it from the image file.

### **11.11.5 Paste (Ctrl +V / Cmnd+V)**

Insert the contents of the clipboard back into the image file

### **11.11.6 Delete (Del)**

Deletes the selected section from the image file.

### **11.11.7 Select All**

Selects the entire image for moving / centering.

### **11.11.8 Crop**

Trims the image file down to the selected region

### **11.11.9 Invert**

Switches the colors of the image file.

### **11.11.10 Rotate**

- Left: Rotates the image file counter-clockwise
- Right: Rotates the image file clockwise
- Any: Opens the Rotate window for rotation by defines degrees.

### **11.11.11 Delete Page**

Deletes currently displayed page. Does not delete the entire file.

### **11.11.12 Selection**

Activates the Area Selection tool.

### **11.11.13 Line**

Activates the Line drawing tool.

### **11.11.14 Brush**

Activates the Brush tool.

### **11.11.15 Deskew**

Activates the Deskew tool for straightening “crooked” scans

### **11.11.16 Selection Mode**

- Opaque

When a selected area is moved to the clipboard the background will be included

- Transparent

When a selected area is moved to the clipboard only the black portion of the selected area will be moved.

### **11.11.17 Pen Color**

Select the color used by the Brush and Line drawing tools.

## **11.12 IMAGE EDITOR > VIEW Menu**

### **11.12.1 Navigator**

Opens and closes the SmartScore Navigator.

### **11.12.2 Toolbar**

Opens and closes Toolbar

### **11.12.3 Toolbar**

Opens and closes Toolbar

### **11.12.4 Image Toolbar**

Opens and closes Image Editing Toolbar

### **11.12.5 Status Bar**

Opens and closes Status Bar at the bottom of main SmartScore Window. Displays current page, cursor position, image size, and zoom percentage.

### **11.12.6 Palettes**

Opens and closes tool palettes for ENF document editing.

### **11.12.7 Image Information**

Provides information on the structure and type of the currently displayed image file.

### **11.12.8 Next Page**

Displays next page of ENF document

### **11.12.9 Previous Page**

Displays previous page of ENF document

### **11.12.10 Go to Page (Ctrl +G Win / Cmnd+G Mac)**

Presents a dialog box to select a page number to jump to. Use scroller to select desired page and click OK.

### **11.12.11 Zoom**

Lists available view percentages. Changing zoom will affect both the image and the ENF file simultaneously.

### **11.12.12 Reset Tools and Palettes (F1)**

Resets windows, toolbars and palettes to their default position.

## 12.1 Score Formats

**Score** - A musical piece compiled as a document. A score usually contains more than one part with all the parts to be played together. In SmartScore, it is a single computer file; an ENF file. A hand-written score is called a manuscript.

**Part** - A part is represented by a staff line either alone (solo part) or grouped into a system with other instruments (ensemble part). A part is usually an single instrument, but in the case of two-handed instruments (piano, organ, xylophone, etc.), it may represent one hand's part.

**Voice** - Derived from choral music but applied to instrumental music as well, *contrapuntal voicing* (sometimes referred to as *polyphonic voicing*) refers to a unique melodic thread distinct from other voices in a measure by its harmonic direction and possibly its timbre. Contrapuntal voices reside in the same measure of the same staff. Voices are often distinguished by stem direction and sometimes by offsetting the horizontal position of notes. For the purposes of SmartScore, a "voice" written in its own staff line is referred to as a "Part".

**Score-Part** - Scores that are printed in sets for each individual instrument. Players read from their own unique set of pages. For example, a duet for guitar and flute would be printed in two separate sets: one for the flute player and one for the guitar. Staves of part scores flow like a book where each staff line appends to the one above it.

**Ensemble** - Scores that have multiple staff lines connected by a vertical bar or "bracket" (usually along the left-hand edge of the music). When joined in this way, each staff line represents a different part or instrument. All parts are played "ensemble". Piano music, (with left-hand and right-hand staves) are joined into one system, is regarded as "ensemble". SmartScore assigns each stave to separate MIDI tracks.

**Landscape** - Some scores are wider than they are high. These "landscape" layouts need to be rotated prior to processing.

**Folio** - Large sized and conductor scores may need to be scaled down during scanning or reduced on a copy machine before scanning. If the score must be reduced more than 50% in order to fit the imaging area of your scanner, you may consider scanning each full-sized page twice and treat each scan as one "image-page".

## 12.2 Score Components

**System** - A grouping of multiple staves linked together by a solid line or bracket along the left margin is called a “system”. All staves belonging to a system are played simultaneously. In ensemble scores, each system appends to the one before it. A single page of a symphony conductor's score, containing 10 or 20 staff lines per system, may represent only a few seconds of music!

**Staff (Stave)** - The field on which notes are represented is called a staff. “Staves” is normally used as the plural. At the core of every staff are five horizontal lines. Each successive line and space are equivalent to a full step in note pitch. The higher the note appears on the staff, the higher its pitch. Every staff line anomaly begins with a clef sign and a key signature.

**Voiceline** - An individual melodic line formed by a voice within one measure. When a staff contains more than one voiceline in any given measure, note stems of each voiceline usually point in the opposite directions. The sum of all note and rest values of each voiceline in any given measure *should be* accounted for, but sometimes are not. Refer to "Working with Contrapuntal Voices", Section 7.9 for more on dealing with this rule in SmartScore.

**Clef** - The clef sign at the beginning of each staff identifies which pitch “class” that staff belongs to. The lowest instruments are written in the bass clef, intermediate instruments and voices often use one of three “C” clef classes while higher-pitched instruments, in addition to the right-hand part of a piano score, are scored in the treble clef. The clef sign always appears at the beginning of every staff line and in the first measure if a *change of clef* occurs. Change of clef signs are smaller than normal clefs.

**Key Signature** - The key signature, along with the clef sign, appears at the beginning of every line; it is also found in the measure where a *change of key* occurs. The key signature defines the “tonal center” of the piece. The number of sharps or flats in the key signature determines the key tone (or tonic).

**Time Signature** - Time signatures usually appear only once: at the beginning of the staff in the first measure of the piece. They will also appear when a *change of time* signature occurs. Time signatures indicate both the number of beats per measure (numerator) as well as which note value is given the fundamental beat (denominator). The sum of note duration values in a given measure must equal the value of the current time signature.

**Note** - A note is the fundamental unit of tone. The duration of a note is determined by its note value (normally between 1 and 128 divisions). The note’s vertical position on a given staff (with clef) determines its pitch.

**Rest** - Rests are equivalent to notes insofar as their durations; but represent silence. They act as “place-holders” used to keep the rhythmic structure of the measure intact.

**Measure** - Staff lines are segmented into equal time divisions called measures. Measures are the building blocks that provide structure for music. The sum of note and rest durations within each measure must equal the value of the current time signature

**Barline** - Barlines are the vertical lines that define the beginning and ending of measures

**Accidental** - Note pitches often range outside of the tonal center defined by the key signature. An accidental shifts its associated note up (sharp) or down (flat) by 1/2 step. Accidentals may also be doubled. An accidental remains effective only for the remainder of the measure in which it appears. A natural “cancels” a note’s current accidental.

**Dot of Prolongation** - Notes and rests that are dotted have the value of their duration lengthened by 1/2. For example, a dotted quarter note is equal in duration to three eighth notes. Double-dotted notes increase the note’s duration by 3/4 of the original.

**Tuplet** - Some notes belong to a special readmit class called “tuplets”. These include triplets, quintuplets and sextuplets. A tuplet is a group of notes marked with a bracket that is subdivided into equal beats (divisions) with a total duration equal to the number of unmodified notes (value). For example, a (3:2) triplet applied to three eighth notes is equal in total duration to two eighth notes.

**Ties** - A tie links two pairs of notes of the same pitch whose durations are combined so that both notes are played as if one note. Ties are often used to sustain the sound of a note across more than one measure.

NOTE:Ties and slurs (*legatos*) often look alike, but they are different. Ties connect two notes of the same pitch and combine their durations into one note event and slurs connect two or more notes over a range of pitches forming a *legato* that when performed, creates a slight overlapping of the notes.

**Articulations** - Performance markings that provide instructions for playback of the marked notes. For example, a staccato, a dot placed above/ below a notehead, means the note should be short, sounding for only a moment.

**Dynamics** - Dynamic markings are used to denote the general volume and intensity of music. For example, “*f*” or *forte* means loud and “*p*” or *piano* means soft.

## 12.3 MIDI Terms

**MIDI**- Musical Instrument Digital Interface. Originally a hardware device that allowed a computer and a synthesizer to communicate, now a generally accepted term for hardware or software that operate according to General MIDI standards.

**Standard MIDI File (SMF)** - The file protocol or *format* for music files saved as MIDI (.MID extension). Includes Type 1 (multiple track / multiple channel) and Type 0 (single track / multiple channel) formats.

**Sound Device**- A MIDI driven tone generator. Sound cards, synthesizers, and MIDI modules all fall under this category.

**MIDI Event** - Each piece of information contained within a MIDI file is an event. This includes Notes (attack and release), Control Changes, System Exclusive, Meta Events, Program Changes, etc.

**Velocity** - The speed at which the note was struck, measured with a number from 0-127.

**Channel** -A MIDI device sends and receives MIDI information along separate and distinct Channels. Each channel contains note and non-note event data. Most MIDI devices can support up to 16 MIDI Channels at one time.

**Patch** - Every MIDI channel has a MIDI patch assigned to it. A Patch is the instrument sound selected for a particular channel when playing back.

**Program Change** - Same as a patch. Indicates a change of patch within a given channel or track.

**Bank** - MIDI devices divide patches into groups of 128. One Bank of patches from a MIDI device can be accessed at a time by a MIDI computer program or another MIDI device.

**Port** - A computer can run several MIDI devices at a time with the proper hardware. Each device is connected to a unique Port.

## 12.4 SmartScore Terms

**ENF** - Extended Notation Format. This is SmartScore's proprietary file format.

**Navigator** - The floating window containing buttons designed to "navigate" through SmartScore's main features and editing environments.

**System Manager** - The System Manager is a sort of "virtual system" which allows for manipulating all or specific voices, parts and systems in the score. It contains the parts and voices that make up the active system. The **Super System**, within it, contains ALL possible parts.

**Voice Line Threading** - SmartScore will differentiate multiple voices within a single staff line by displaying them in different colors (Voice 1-black, Voice 2-red, Voice 3-green, and Voice 4-blue) while, at the same time, creating an independent MIDI channel for each voice.

# INDEX - SmartScore X2



**A**  
acciacatura 125, 215  
accelerando 56  
accent  
    editing 128  
    playback 130  
accidentals 241  
accidentals, editing 126  
accuracy, recognition 30, 35  
active staffline 6, 74, 224  
    lock / unlock 74  
active system 69  
add empty 76, 90  
adding parts, systems and pages 112, 116  
Apply To  
    System Manager 119  
apply to new score 120  
Aria Player 39  
    exiting 40  
    troubleshooting 39  
arpeggio 131  
articulations 241  
    deleting 132  
    insert/delete multiple 132  
articulations palette 127  
Associate Image Files 229  
Audio CD recording 212  
Audio MIDI Setup 73

Audio Units (AU) 71  
Auto Save 216  
Auto-spacing 148

**B**  
barline properties 83  
barlines 241  
    bracketing 173  
    deleting end of staff 51, 82, 140  
    editing 140  
    repositioning measures 121  
    reset number per line 112  
beaming flagged notes 105, 223  
beams  
    across measures 151  
    Auto-Beam 148  
    cross-staff voicing 150  
    making 81  
    reshape 120  
Begin Recognition Window 4  
bowings 26  
bracket  
    broken or missing 66  
bracketing 109, 172  
brightness, scanning 21

**C**  
CD Writer 212  
centering music for printing 94  
change  
    beamed note 81  
    notes and symbols 79  
chord cluster 80  
    splitting into voices 45  
Chord symbol preferences 170  
chord symbols

- changing 167
- copying 171
- display 26, 215, 225
- inserting 166
- moving 171
- new 169
- preferences 215
- clefs 240
  - editing 137
  - transposition 106
  - unifying 145
  - visibility 214
- Clefs and Signatures palette 137
- cluster, chord 80
- Coda 52, 61
  - recognizing split systems 27
- color
  - MIDI channels 216
  - overriding automatic color 148
  - preferences 216
- conductor score from parts 25, 29, 101
- contrapuntal voices (see also "voicelines") 9, 148
- Copy 219
  - ENF region to clipboard 88
  - to paste in other programs 88
- courtesy accidentals 126
- crescendos and decrescendos
  - hiding 152
  - inserting 134
  - properties 57
- Crop 35
- cross-measure beaming 151
- cross-staff voicing 150
  - locking the active staff 151
  - preferences 214

Ctrl+A (Select all) 45, 143, 221

## D

- da Capo 53
- dal Segno 53
- darkness, scanning 21
- defaults, restoring 216
- delete 79, 104, 105
  - barlines at the end of staff 51
  - beamed note 81
  - entire part 118
  - note(s) from cluster 45, 80, 143
  - notes and symbols 104
  - numbered endings 51, 82, 140
  - selected group of objects 105
  - when all else fails (Tip) 105
- descelerano 56
- display, page view 74
- document layout 94
  - custom 95
- document preferences 172, 214
- dot of prolongation 125, 241
  - delete 12
- draw tool
  - freehand 36
- drums
  - automatic drum patterns 183
  - virtual 185
  - working with 175
- duplicate parts (TAB) 179
- dynamics 241
  - markings 134
  - properties 58
  - range 153
- Dynamics palette 133

## E

Edit

Format score 99

EDIT menu 219

endings

numbered 49

simple numbered 50

ENF 242

add new page 76, 222

blank templates 90

bracketing 172

cascade windows 228

CD recording 212

clone document 228

Cut, Copy and Paste 219

editing files 19

file formats 87

Graphical Controllers 63

header 174

image association 225

orientation of score 96

paging 155

playback 41

Preferences 214

reformat 91

region to copy 85

scoring 66, 88

status bar 76

System Manager 113

tempo marking 222

tile windows 228

using scrollers 155

visibility of parts 118

warning preferences 216

Zoom 76, 192, 195

ENF - MIDI

remove articulations 218

ENF playback 39

real-time settings 43

ensemble 239

creating part scores from 102

Error Message 225

errors, rhythmic 77

expanded systems 69

exporting ENF files 87

expressions 128, 136

Extended Notation Format 5

extracting parts and voices 115

Score Structure 100

## F

fermata

editing 128

playback 129

file formats 66, 88, 217

import 144

FILE menu 217

Finale

exporting files to 66, 88, 218

replacing SmartScore Lite 87

Finale@, importing into 87

Fine 53

fingerings 171

flagged notes

beaming 105, 223

folio 239

fonts

changing style 165

setting default style 214

format score 91, 222

formatting

optimize print size 86

free rhythm 11

## G

Garritan sounds 39

troubleshooting 39

glissando 131

Go to... 113, 155

grace notes 125, 215

Graphical Controllers

ENF 63

MIDI 195

guitar

classical notation 171

Guitar Chord Library 166

guitar fret symbols

editing 166

see chord symbols 215

guitar tablature 176

convert from notation 175

copying from notation 179

recognition 26

scanning 21

guitar, classical notation 16

guitar, tutorial 16

## H

hairpin

inserting 133

properties 57

Help 229

Hidden Symbols 152

hymnal and choral scores 45, 49

## I

Image Editor 34

Cut/ Copy and Paste 38

grey thresholding 38

image info 34

image information 226

insert 104

beamed note 81

Installation 4

instrument change 47

Instrument Templates 54

instruments

changing during playback 47, 193

selecting for playback 46

transposed 62

## J

Jumps 52

## K

Karaoke view 61

preferences 216

Keep 26

key signature 137, 240

at end of line 138

change 138

unifying 145

key transposition 84, 106

Keyboard shortcuts 141

## L

landscape 239

line spacing

using tabs 92

Long view (horizontal display) 74

lyrics 162

default font preferences 214

font size and style 165  
recognizing 25  
show/don't show 214, 225  
when found under last staff 26

## M

map, Quick Keys 160, 161

margins, changing 96

measure number

display 214, 225

measures 241

change number per line 112

error 77

inserting and merging 220

pickup 59

reformatting 91

resizing 121

shuttle between systems 121

split 59

merging

measures 220

parts or systems 66

metronome marks 135

MIDI

bank 242

channel 242

closing MIDI views 188

Cut/Copy and Paste 200

display controls 205

Event List 201

event selection 197

Graphical Controllers 195

importing files 155

inserting note events 202

Instrument settings 195

measure settings 201

metronome 206

note attributes 198

Note Event 199

patch 193, 242

playback 189

playback range 191

port 242

program change 47, 193, 242

recording 206

new tracks 208

select by time frame 197

selecting view 187

Setup 41

Show Actual Playback 191, 233

shuttle tool 195

snap to 208, 233

Step Time Recording 209

switching tracks 191

synchronize views 232

Track Overview 188

velocity 242

velocity and duration 199

viewing in an ENF document 229

MIDI Devices 190

MIDI Event 242

MIDI Files

import 144

MIDI instruments

assigning 114

changing 47

MIDI Menu Items 230

MIDI Setup

Mac 73

MIDI to ENF 155

miniatures, scanning 22

Mini-Console 41

modes  
    Hidden symbols 152  
    Insert or change a symbol 79  
    Lyric 162  
    Nudge 120  
    Text 164

mordent  
    editing 128  
    playback 130

Multi-measure rest properties 59

multi-measure rests 124

music editing 77

MusicXML 66, 88, 216

**N**

navigating around ENF 74

navigating ENF screens 153

Navigator 143, 242

NIFF 218

normalize graphical controllers 65

notation display 227  
    image association 225

notes 240  
    adding to existing 80  
    adjusting stems 120  
    associated with lyric block 162  
    Auto-spacing 148  
    change 79  
    changing pitch 77, 120  
    changing values 104  
    color 148  
    color properties 216  
    deleting 79  
    dotted 125  
    editing beamed 81  
    editing clusters 80

    grace notes 125  
    insert, change & delete 104  
    inserting 124  
    inserting and changing 79  
    moving horizontal 120  
    overlap or offset 27, 152, 215  
    properties 54  
    punctuation 121  
    Quick-select 8  
    splitting 45, 143  
    stem direction 79, 142  
    swap position of 150

Nudge mode 120  
    barlines 91, 121  
    moving multiple symbols 120  
    repositioning measures 121  
    reshaping angles 120  
    special functions 121  
    text 166

numbered endings 50  
    deleting / changing 51

**O**

online help 229

optimize score size 99

optimized systems 69, 109, 118, 221

Ossia 113

Ossias 26

overlap/offset notes 152

**P**

page  
    add empty 112, 222

page layout  
    centering 9

page number display 215

- Page Setup 9, 96
  - Center on Page 94
  - optimize page size 99
  - simple centering 85
- page type
  - orientation 96
  - preferences 216
- page view layout 74, 227
- palettes, expanding 7, 78
- part linking 66, 69, 109, 143
- Part names
  - editing 114
  - showing 225
- parts 239
  - adding new 116
  - extracting 13, 115
  - maintaining continuity 66
  - making visible/invisible 118
  - merging separated systems 66
  - naming in System Manager 114
  - re-linking / optimized 69
  - show names in ENF 114
  - visibility 111
- Paste 220
  - page or region into other programs 88
- Paste / Replace 220
- PDF
  - recognition of 22
  - Save as 86
- pedals 26
- percussion 175
  - editing 179
  - noteheads 54
  - recognition 26
- Percussion clef 139
- Piano Roll 191
  - pickup and close-out measures 11
  - pickup measures 14, 59, 60
  - pitch shift (see Nudge) 120
    - selected notes 105
- Playback
  - change instrument 47
  - changing instruments on-the-fly 41
  - Console functions 42
  - free rhythm 11
  - hesitating 59
  - inserting instrument change 193
  - instrument change - ENF View 47
  - jumps 52
  - Lock to time signature 11, 59, 215
  - maintaining continuity 66
  - pickup measures 11
  - Program change 47, 242
  - Properties tool 12
  - Quick tricks 41
  - Randomizer 215
  - repeats 49
    - selecting a range 13, 41
- Playback Console 204
  - Set Instruments 43
- polyphonic voices 9
- Preferences
  - Document 214
  - Program 216
- Print Preview 85, 94, 218
- printing 85
  - centering pages 94
  - optimizing page size 86, 99
- Program Change
  - ENF View 47
  - Event List 204
  - Piano Roll 193

Program preferences 216

Properties

barline 59

Note 54

playback 54

staff 111

Properties tool 12

punctuation 121

## Q

quantization 233

Quick Keys 141

Barlines 140

Beam Direction 142

Dots 141

Dynamics 133

QuickSelect 104

Rests 124

Select Tool 105

Stem Direction 142

Ties 142

Tuplets 124

Vertical Alignment 48, 149

Quick-Select 8, 78, 79

## R

recognition

adding a staff missed by 67

bowings 26

chord symbols 166

fretboard 27

hymnal fonts 26

joining offset voices 27

lyrics and text 25

optimized scores 27

options and preview tabs 25

PDF 22

pedals 26

poor 29

sample files 4

System Report 5, 216

thresholding to improve 37

triplets 26

record a CD 212

record new MIDI track 208

reference views 153

overlay 154

reformat score 91, 113, 214, 222

Reformatting 91

registration, product 230

rehearsal symbols 215

Re-link parts 66, 69

after Unify 144

before inserting staff 67

Repeat previous measure mark 49

repeated endings 51

repeated verses and sections 49

Repeats 49

reset windows and palettes 87

Resolution (dpi) 21

rests 241

associated with lyric block 162

moving horizontal 120

ritard 56

Rotate scanned image 37

ruler preferences 216

## S

Save ENF 39, 86

scan view window 153

display 228

floating 228

- overlay 75
- split control 228
- scanning music 18
  - all-in-one scanners 99
  - choose interface 20
  - Macintosh 19
  - outside of SmartScore 19
  - resolution (dpi) 21
- score
  - annotations 171
  - create from scratch 90
  - display 74
  - formats 239
  - header 174
  - large notehead 111
  - reduced part 110
  - reformatting 91
- score from scratch 89
- Score Properties 82, 109
- Score Structure 100
- Score-Part 101, 112, 239
  - adding 112
  - scanning in 28
- screen grab 88
- Segno 52
- Select All (Ctrl+A) 221
- Select tool 105
- shaped notes 54
- shortcut conventions 17
- Shortcuts, keyboard 141
- Sibelius
  - exporting to 66, 88
- signatures
  - unifying 145
- Slur 127
- slurs
  - editing 127
  - playback 127
  - properties 55
  - reshaping 120
- SmartScore Lite, replace 87
- soft accent
  - playback 130
- solo violin tutorial 16
- spacing 92, 110
  - applying to other staves and systems 112
  - unifying staff and system 111
- Split into separate voices 45
- split pane tool 75
- splitting chords into voices 143
- staccato
  - playback 129
- staff 240
  - active 224
  - adding / removing 112
  - adding new 116
  - invisible or unrecognized 67
  - properties 111
  - spacing 92, 109, 110
  - visibility 111
- Staff Properties 16, 67, 111
- stem direction
  - changing 79, 142
- Step Time Recording 209
- Super System 68, 118
- symbol preferences 215
- symbol select 78
- symphonic music
  - adding missing parts 118
  - scanning 24
- system 240

- add / remove 112
- apply changes to 119
- changing widths
  - global 95
  - single 92
- collapsed 69
- display characteristics 214
- merging 66
- optimize 69, 118
- re-linking parts in 69
- spacing 92
- System Manager 113, 242
  - Part Names 114
  - Visibility 115
- System Report 28
- System+, apply changes to 119

## T

- tablature (TAB) 175
  - change fingering 177
  - duplicate notation staff 179
  - editing 176
  - rhythmic cues 177
  - scanning 21
- tablature(TAB) 113
  - change staff to 111
- tabs,spacing 179
  - distances 92
  - margin control 95
  - staffline spacing 93
  - system width 91
  - unifying staff & line distances 9
- Task Window 4, 216, 228
- tempo
  - markings 136
  - properties 56, 136

- setting default 135, 222
- Tempo Controller
  - ENF 64
  - MIDI 195
- tenuto
  - playback 129
- Text
  - adding new style 166
  - deleting 165
  - Document preferences 214
  - editing 164
  - font size and style 165
  - nudging 120, 166
- Text and tools palette 141
- ties 126, 241
- tiling views 146
- time signature 137, 240
  - change 138
    - at end of line 138
  - unifying 145
- Tool palettes 122, 123
  - expanding 78
  - resetting 87
- Toolbars 224
- transposed instruments 62
- Transposition 84, 106
- tremelo 130
  - beamed 131
  - playback 130
- trill
  - editing 129
  - playback 128
  - properties 57
- triplets 44, 127
  - change bracket type 215
  - implied 44, 152

- nested 125
- tuplets 241
  - properties 58
  - user-defined 125

Turn 129

turn

- editing 128
- playback 128

Tutorial 4

## U

Undo 80

Unify 145

Unify key, time and clefs 144

updates, online 230

user interface preferences 216

## V

Velocity Controller

- ENF 64

- MIDI 193

velocity, note 242

verses, repeated 49

vertical alignment 27

- correcting 47

- Recognition Options 27

- verifying 150, 164

vertical event 47

View > Scan View Window 76

views, tiling 146

violin, solo 16

visibility

- part 118

- voice 45

voice color 7

voiceline 77, 148, 240

threading 10, 242

visiting another staff 150

voices 9, 239

- affecting playback 45

- assigning instruments to 46, 114, 194

- color 148

- extracting 13, 116

- gluing and ungluing 48, 149

- offset 27

- splitting 45, 143

- swap position 150

- using hidden rests 152

- vertically aligning 48, 149

- visibility 45

VST 71

## W

window synchronization 76

Working with Finale® 87

## X

XML

- export 216

- import 144

## Z

Zoom

- ENF 76

- preferences 216

- Scan Window 76

- screen size 216

zoom 227

